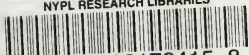


NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08173415 8



7-1AE



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

J. d. Raworth
Aiken
Be



CATECHISM

OF

UNITED STATES History.

BY B. R. CARROLL.

— TWENTIETH EDITION—REVISED & CORRECTED. —

CHARLESTON, S. C.

E. J. DAWSON & CO.

Protect the Parts, and Preserve the Whole.

Ga.
1732.

N. J.
1664.

S. C.
1670.

N. C.
1650.

R. I.
1636.

Con.
1635.

Va.
1607.

N. Y.
1614.

Ms.
1620

N. H.
1623

Md.
1634.

Del.
1643.

Pen.
1643

Io.
1846.

Mich.
1837.

Me.
1820.

Ill.
1918.

Ind.
1816.

O.
1802.

Vt.
1791.

Wis.
1848.

Cal.
1850.

Ore.
1859.

Min.
1858.

Tex.
1846.

Pa.
1843.

Ark.
1836.

Mo.
1821.

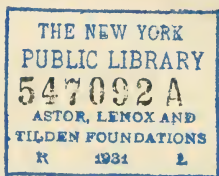
Ala.
1819.

Miss.
1817.

La.
1812

Ten.
1796.

Ken.
1792.



Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1859, by

B. R. CARROLL,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the District
of South Carolina.

DEDICATION.

IN TOKEN OF HIS EXACT SCHOLARSHIP,
LARGE EXPERIENCE AS A TEACHER,
AND
FRIENDLY ASSISTANCE IN THE PREPARATION OF THIS VOLUME,
THE AUTHOR DEDICATES IT
TO
HENRY M. BRUNS, LL.D.,
PRINCIPAL OF THE HIGH SCHOOL OF CHARLESTON,
ASSURED THAT
THE COMPLIMENT WHICH DR. BRUNS WILL MOST CHERISH,
WILL BE HIS SATISFACTION IN LEARNING,
THAT THIS LITTLE BOOK
HAS PROVED USEFUL TO THE PROFESSION OF WHICH HE HAS BEEN,
FOR SO MANY YEARS,
THE DISTINGUISHED ORNAMENT.

INTRODUCTION.

The object of this little book is to present a clear compendious view of the history of the United States

The periods treated of are the discovery and settlement of the country; the progress of the Colonies; their revolt from the mother country; and the development of the Republic, as embraced in the administrations of the different Presidents.

The important events of our history are particularly noted; and great care has been bestowed upon their accuracy, as regards the time, place, and circumstances of their occurrence.

Facts and not opinions are presented in the course of the work; and no reader, of whatever section or sect, will be offended by the excitement of prejudices at the expense of Truth.

The catechetical method has been adopted; because, long experience in teaching, has convinced the author, that, in such a form, the greatest amount of matter can be embraced in the smallest space.

This Catechism does not propose to exclude the use of any of the school histories now before the public. Most of them have their own particular merits, and while they have been beneficially used, the author would highly recommend them as adjuncts to this work.

Though written and published at the South, the author wishes it distinctly understood, that he claims no sectional favor for his book. A history of the nation should not flatter North or South, East or West. Each portion should know the history of the other; and he who confines truth to the boundaries of either, is a bad historian, and a still worse teacher.

In using the work, the author would recommend a plan pursued by himself with much success. Let the pupil be required to study, accurately, the lesson set him in the Catechism. After reciting the same, let him exercise himself, by writing out the substance of the lesson in narrative form; using his own language, and entering into such details as his own reading, or the instruction of his teacher, may suggest.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

IN offering the present enlarged and improved edition of the Catechism of United States History, the author would gratefully acknowledge the liberal patronage extended to his little book.

The present volume has been carefully revised, and almost entirely rewritten; and embraces, among other additions, the following:—Notes, biographical and geographical; the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution of the United States, with analyses of the same; Tables of the principal Land and Sea Battles of our country; and a carefully prepared Chronological Chart of American History. These of themselves furnish a most useful summary to the student; nor can he invest his time more profitably than in giving such lessons a permanent place in his memory.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

	Page
Discovery of America,	1

CHAPTER II.

Discoveries—English, Portuguese, French, and Spanish, ..	10
--	----

CHAPTER III.

Settlements—Virginia, Massachusetts, New York, New Hampshire, Connecticut, Rhode Island, New Jersey, Maryland, Delaware, Pennsylvania, North and South Carolina, and Georgia,	21
---	----

CHAPTER IV.

Government of the Colonies—Population, Classes, Character and Manners; Manufactures, Commerce, Agriculture, Religion, Witchcraft, Printing, and Letters,	39
---	----

CHAPTER V.

The English Revolution, Abrogation of the New England Charters, Indian Colonial Wars, French War, Washington, Braddock's Defeat, Attack upon the French Possessions, English Possessions in America.....	51
--	----

CHAPTER VI.

	Page
Causes of the American Revolution—Early Provocations, Writs of Assistance, Taxation, Stamp Act, Indignation of the Colonies, Second Colonial Congress, Sons of Liberty, Repeal of Stamp Act, Tax on Glass, Paper, etc., Quartering of Troops, Non-Importation, Tea Tax, Reception of Tea in Boston and other Cities, Boston Port Bill, etc.,	64

CHAPTER VII.

The Revolution—The Colonies Arm for Defense, the King's Speech, Trade Restricted, Lexington and Concord, Popular Excitement, Georgia, Mecklenburg, etc., Second Continental Congress, Bunker Hill, Expedition against Canada, Action of Parliament, Battle of Fort Sullivan, etc.,	81
--	----

CHAPTER VIII.

The Declaration of Independence—Its History and Analysis,	94
---	----

CHAPTER IX.

The Campaign of 1776,	117
-----------------------------	-----

CHAPTER X.

The Campaigns of 1777 and 1778,	131
---------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XI.

The Campaigns of 1779 and 1780,	139
---------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XII.

Campaign of 1781, and Close of the War,	152
---	-----

CHAPTER XIII.

Organization of the Government,	160
---------------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XIV.

	Page
The Navy during the Revolution; Manners, Religion, Trade and Commerce, Population, Education; Reflec- tions,.....	162

CHAPTER XV.

Washington's Administration—1789, 1797,	167
---	-----

CHAPTER XVI.

John Adams's Administration—1797-1801,.....	172
---	-----

CHAPTER XVII.

Jefferson's Administration—1801-1809,	175
---	-----

CHAPTER XVIII.

James Madison's Administration, 1809-1817,.....	182
---	-----

CHAPTER XIX.

Monroe's Administration, 1817-1825,	200
---	-----

CHAPTER XX.

John Quincy Adams's Administration, 1825-1829,.....	205
---	-----

CHAPTER XXI.

Andrew Jackson's Administration, 1829-1837,	209
---	-----

CHAPTER XXII.

Van Buren's Administration—1837-1841,	214
---	-----

CHAPTER XXIII.

Harrison's Administration—1841,	220
John Tyler's Administration—1841-1845,	221

CHAPTER XXIV.

James K. Polk's Administration—1845–1849,.....	Page 225
--	-------------

CHAPTER XXV.

Taylor's Administration—1849,.....	240
Fillmore's Administration—1850,.....	243

CHAPTER XXVI.

Pierce's Administration,.....	247
-------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXVII.

Buchanan's Administration,.....	252
---------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXVIII.

Lincoln's Administration,.....	255
--------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXIX.

Johnson's Administration,.....	271
--------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXX.

Physical Features—Population—Employment—Agriculture—General Industry—Commerce—Government—Religion and Education,.....	272
---	-----

APPENDIX:

I.—Declaration of Independence,.....	283
II.—Constitution of the United States of America,...	289
III.—States and Territories,.....	311
IV.—Table of Presidents and Vice-Presidents,.....	312
V.—Principal Battles of the Revolution,.....	313
VI.—Principal Battles of the War of 1812,.....	315
VII.—Principal Battles of the Mexican War,.....	317
VIII.—Chronological Table of American History,.....	318

REVIEW QUESTIONS FOR EACH CHAPTER.

1. What is the subject of this chapter? Narrate the chief incidents therein recorded? Detail any further information you may have on the subject. Name the distinguished persons mentioned in the chapter. State the place and time of their birth—their noted actions—anecdotes of them, and their characters.

2. What geographical places are mentioned in this chapter? Point them out on the map. Describe them, and state for what they are respectively remarkable.

3. Give a general outline of the book. How does the author treat this subject? What impressions have you of the birth, progress, present condition, and future prospects of the country?

4. What seems to be the distinguishing character of the people? What portion of them are natives? What portion foreigners? Give some account of the Agriculture of the country; its Commerce; its Manufactures; its Literature; Arts and Sciences; etc., etc.

NOTE.—These, and similar topics which the teacher may suggest, will afford interesting themes for exercising his pupils in composition.

C A T E C H I S M

OF

UNITED STATES HISTORY.

CHAPTER I.

DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

The Welsh and Norwegians.

1. *For whom do the Welsh claim the honor of having first crossed the Atlantic?*

According to Welsh historians, the Atlantic was first crossed in 1170, by Madoc, a prince and hero of Wales.

2. *What people claim it on better grounds?*

The Norwegians, on stronger evidence, claim that honor for one of their adventurous sea-kings.

3. *What discoveries did the Norwegians make in the ninth century?*

About the year 1000, if we may believe Icelandic manuscripts, a vessel, driven by storms southeast of Greenland, arrived at the continent of America.

4. *What part of the coast was reached?*

That part since called Labrador; but the discovery was considered so unimportant, it was soon forgotten.

5. *Had the Mariner's Compass been previously known?*

In 1302, the Portuguese used it; but by its aid had sailed no further than the Azores, in the West, and the Equator in the South.

Columbus.

6. *For whom was the discovery of the western continent reserved?*

For Christopher Columbus, who was born at Genoa, 1435.

7. *What was his father, and what education did he give his son?*

His father was a wool-dresser; and limited the education of his son to the elements of geography, mathematics, and astronomy.

8. *When only fifteen years of age, what did Columbus do?*
He went to sea.

9. *What befel him at a later period?*

A few years after, while in the service of a kinsman, who commanded a Genoese squadron, he took part in a battle with some Venetian ships, near the coast of Portugal.

10. *In the engagement, what narrow escape did he experience?*

His ship having taken fire, he was obliged to leap into the water and swim ashore.

11. *After this, to what place did he go?*

To the city of Lisbon, in Portugal, where he married the daughter of Perestrello, a distinguished navigator.

12. *With whom did he reside after his marriage?*

With his mother-in-law; the father of his wife being dead.

13. *What privilege did she allow him?*

That of examining the charts and journals of her deceased husband.

14. *With what did he thus become acquainted?*

With the facts and suggestions touching the Portuguese dis-

coveries of a passage to the East Indies, by doubling the southern extremity of Africa.

15. *What belief did he now adopt?*

That a western passage to India was practicable; and, that a large body of land lay to the west of the Atlantic, designed to balance the portion lying in the eastern hemisphere.

16. *What discoveries confirmed his belief?*

Various discoveries in the Atlantic, such as pieces of carved wood, and trunks of huge pine trees, which had been noticed after long westerly winds.

17. *With what else had he been made acquainted?*

With the well-established fact, that the bodies of two men had been cast on the Azores, the features of whom differed from those of any known race of people.

18. *Under whose patronage did he first offer to sail?*

Under that of his countrymen, the Genoese, who rejected his proposal.

19. *To whom did he next apply?*

To John II. of Portugal, who refused to assist him.

20. *To whom did he now apply?*

To Henry VII. of England.

21. *Whom did he send to King Henry?*

His brother Bartholomew, who being seized by pirates, was detained by them for a long time.

22. *After Columbus was disappointed in Portugal, where did he go?*

In 1484, he went to Spain, and there supported himself by making maps and charts.

23. *With whom did Columbus finally obtain an interview?*

With Ferdinand, who was then King of Arragon.

24. *What was the result of this interview?*

The King listened to his views, and submitted them to the learned men of his kingdom, who condemned the project as

irreligious. His opponents maintained that, if the earth was round, there would be found a constant descent on the other side of it; and that voyagers would either slip off the globe, or, at any rate, never be able to return.

25. *After a long time, who favored Columbus?*

Isabella, the wife of Ferdinand, who was advised by the wise men of her country to assist him.

26. *What dignities were then conferred upon him?*

He was appointed High Admiral and Viceroy of all the countries he might discover.

27. *From what place did he fit out his fleet?*

From Palos, a port in Spain, on the Atlantic coast.

28. *What difficulty did he next experience?*

That of procuring sailors for so long a voyage.

29. *How many ships did he obtain?*

Three ships, with ninety sailors and a few adventurers—in all, 120 men.

30. *What were the names of his ships?*

They were called the Santa Maria, the Pinta, and Nina.

31. *Who commanded the Pinta and Nina?*

Two brothers, after whom these ships were named.

32. *What was the expense of the whole expedition?*

About \$18,000.

The First Voyage, 1492.

33. *Whence, and when, did this little fleet sail?*

From Palos, on the 3d day of August, 1492.

34. *What course did he steer?*

A southwesterly course. On the 13th of August, he reached the Canary Islands, where he refitted his ships; and thence sailing due West, launched upon the mighty ocean.

35. *What circumstances occurred to alarm his crew?*

Observing that the magnetic needle did not point exactly to

the North Star, but varied toward the West, they became terrified, and threatened to throw their commander into the sea, unless he consented to return.

36. *How did he pacify them?*

By promising to return home, if land was not discovered in three days.

37. *What happened on the evening of October 11, 1492?*

Having discovered indications of land, the sails were furled, and a close watch kept; and, at daybreak, the voyagers beheld the country they were seeking, covered with forests, and decked with all the flowers of the Tropics.

38. *Who was the first to land?*

Columbus was the first to land, and in the name of his sovereigns, the King and Queen of Spain, took possession of the country.

39. *What was the land thus discovered?*

It was one of the Bahama Islands. The Indians called it Guanahani; Columbus named it San Salvador—The Holy Saviour.

40. *In what direction did he now sail?*

He sailed from these Islands, further to the South; since he had learned from the natives that gold was to be found there.

41. *What islands did he next discover?*

Cuba and Hayti. The latter island he named Hispaniola, or Little Spain. It was afterward called San Domingo

42. *What happened to Columbus while on this Island?*

He lost one of his vessels by shipwreck.

43. *What did he then do?*

He left thirty-five men on the island. These laid the foundation of the first European settlement in the New World. In honor of his queen, he named the place ISABELLA; and January 1st, 1493, set sail for Palos, which he reached on the

15th March of the same year—just seven months and eleven days from the time of his first departure.

44. *Why did the Spaniards call these islands the West Indies?*

From the mistaken notion, that they were the western part of India.

45. *To what dangers was he subjected on his return home?*

On his return voyage, a violent storm threatened himself and crew with destruction.

46. *How did he seek to prevent his discoveries from being lost to the world?*

He wrote an account of them on parchment, placed it in a cask, and threw it into the sea.

47. *What was the first port he entered on his return?*

On his return voyage, he was driven by a storm into Lisbon; but shortly afterward reached Palos, from which place he had sailed on his first voyage.

48. *How was he there received?*

Amid the acclamations of the populace and the thunder of cannon.

49. *To whom did he first present himself?*

He first presented himself to his patrons, the King and Queen of Spain, and laid before them the history of his discoveries.

50. *What specimens did he bring for his sovereigns*

Products of the new world and some natives.

The Second Voyage, 1493.

51. *When did Columbus make a second voyage, and from what place?*

On the 25th of September, 1493, from Cadiz.

52. *With what force?*

With 17 vessels and 1,500 men, many of whom were among the noblest families in Spain.

53. *With what were the adventurers furnished?*

With every thing required for conquest or settlement, and all kinds of European animals, plants, seeds, etc.

54. *On arriving at Hispaniola, in what condition did he find the Colony?*

He found that his Colony had been cut off.

55. *Where did he next go?*

To explore Jamaica and the surrounding islands.

56. *On his return to Hispaniola, whom did he meet?*

His brother Bartholomew, from whom he had been separated for more than fourteen years.

57. *What did the followers of Columbus now begin to do?*

They now began to murmur, being dissatisfied with his management of affairs.

58. *Who was sent out to examine into his conduct?*

An emissary of his enemies.

59. *On this, what did Columbus do?*

He deemed it proper to return to Spain, and plead his own cause before the throne.

60. *What resulted?*

He established his innocence, beyond all dispute, and was again received into popular favor.

The Third Voyage, 1498.

61. *In what year did Columbus undertake his third voyage?*

In the year 1498.

62. *In this voyage, whither did he direct his course?*

He directed his course more toward the equator, than he had done before.

63. *By so doing, what did he discover?*

The island of Trinidad, and the coast of South America, near the mouth of the Orinoco River.

64. *When in this latitude, to what danger was he subjected?*

His vessels were in danger of being destroyed by the rapid rush of water at the mouth of that large river.

65. *What did he think concerning it?*

He thought, that so mighty a stream could belong only to a continent.

66. *On reaching Hispaniola, to what did he devote himself?*

He set about regulating the affairs of the colony; but was interrupted in this work by the arrival of Bovadilla.

67. *With what powers was Bovadilla invested?*

The Spanish sovereigns deputed him to examine into the conduct of Columbus, and if necessary, to supersede him in command.

68. *How was Columbus now treated?*

He was sent back to Spain in chains, and received at court with much disrespect.

69. *When the captain, on the voyage, offered to take off his chains, what was Columbus' reply?*

"No," said he, "I wear these chains in consequence of an order from my sovereigns. By their commands they were put on, and by theirs alone shall they be taken off."

70. *How did he argue his cause, and with what result?*

He triumphantly repelled every charge: Bovadilla was degraded from his command; but Columbus was not restored to his station; Ovando being appointed in his stead.

The Fourth Voyage, 1502.

71. *When did Columbus make a fourth voyage to America, and with what design?*

In 1502 he made a fourth voyage to America, in hope of finding a passage to India, by pushing further westward than he had yet done.

72. *What were the principal occurrences of this voyage?*

He sailed along the coast of South America, and the Gulf

of Darien ; and, reaching the coast of Jamaica, he was there wrecked ; but finally arrived at Hispaniola.

73. *When did he return to Spain ?*

In the summer of 1504, shortly after the death of his patron, Queen Isabella.

74. *What is said of the remainder of Columbus' life ?*

It was spent in sorrow and gloom.

75. *Where, and at what age did he die ?*

At Valladolid, in the 71st year of his age.

76. *Where was his body deposited ?*

In the Convent of San Francisco, in that city.

77. *To what place was it removed ?*

To a monastery at Seville, where, for a time, it rested with the remains of his son Diego.

78. *To what place were their remains thence removed ?*

To Hispaniola, where they were again disinterred, and conveyed to Havana. They now repose in the Cathedral of that city.

79. *Was Columbus aware of the real grandeur of his discoveries ?*

No ! he died ignorant of them, and believed he had only opened a new way to the old resorts of Oriental commerce.

80. *What did he suppose in regard to his discoveries of Hispaniola and Cuba ?*

He supposed Hispaniola to be the ancient Ophir, which had been visited by the ships of Solomon, and that Cuba and Terra Firma were remote parts of Asia.

81. *What had other Spanish navigators been doing ?*

Encouraged by the success of Columbus, they had found their way to the new world.

82. *Who was conspicuous among them ?*

Ojeda, who having attended Columbus in his first voyage, and examined all his maps and journals, visited America in 1499.

83. *What distinguished individual had accompanied him?*

A well-educated Florentine gentleman, named Amerigo Vespucci.

84. *What did Vespucci do on his return?*

He published several interesting descriptions of the lands he had visited; and, in 1504, in a letter addressed to René, Duke of Lorraine, succeeded in having the country named AMERICA.

85. *How was this accomplished?*

Martin Waldseemuller, a geographer of the duke's, published a map of the country, and called it AMERICA, in compliment to Amerigo Vespucci.

CHAPTER II.

DISCOVERIES—ENGLISH, PORTUGUESE, FRENCH, AND SPANISH.

English Discoveries, 1497—1598.

1. *What prevented England from embarking in foreign discoveries toward the end of the fifteenth century?*

The desolating civil wars, known in history as the Wars of the Roses.

NOTE.—The Wars of the Roses were the contests between the houses of York and Lancaster for the English crown; commencing in the reign of Henry IV., and ending in that of Henry VII., the latter king having overcome Richard III. at the battle of Bosworth. The house of York wore a *white* rose, and the house of Lancaster a *red*.

2. *When these wars had ended, to what did the English turn their attention?*

The English began to turn their thoughts to the enlargement of their commerce.

3. *What did Henry VII. do in furtherance of this?*

He commissioned John Cabot, a Venetian merchant of Bris-

tol, to sail on a voyage of discovery, and take possession of all new lands, in the name of England.

4. *What discovery did Cabot make?*

On the 24th of June, 1497, one year before Columbus had seen the main land of America, Cabot reached what is now called Newfoundland, and gave it the name of PRIMA VISTA.

5. *What did he bring back as the profits of his enterprise?*

Three savages, and two turkeys, the first specimens of this bird ever seen in Europe.

6. *Who set sail soon after John Cabot's return?*

Sebastian, his son, set sail with three hundred men, for the purpose of discovering a northwest passage to China.

7. *What success did he meet with?*

In his first voyage he visited various points on the North American coast as far south as Albemarle Sound, and took possession of the whole country for the crown of England.

8. *Did he make any other voyages to America?*

He made several, and secured to England a title to the greater portion of the North American coast, by right of discovery.

9. *What were the discoveries of Frobisher?*

In 1576, Queen Elizabeth sent out Martin Frobisher to discover, if possible, a northwest passage. He proceeded as far north, on the American coast, as Elizabeth's Foreland and Frobisher's Sound, both of which he named. He landed at 60° north, and captured one of the natives of the place; but being obliged to relinquish his enterprise on account of the ice, he returned home.

10. *Did he make subsequent voyages to America?*

He made two others to this country; one in 1577, and another in 1578. In both, his design was to explore the country in search of gold—to discover which he utterly failed.

11. *At this time, what number of vessels did he find engaged in the fisheries at Newfoundland?*

Three hundred and fifty in all, viz.: one hundred from Spain, fifty from Portugal, one hundred and fifty from France, and fifty from England: all which were actively engaged in the Cod and Whale fisheries.

Circumnavigation of the Globe.

12. *In the year 1578, what English commander circumnavigated the globe?*

Sir Francis Drake, sailing from Plymouth, in England, December 15th, 1577, passed through the Straits of Magellan, visited the western coast of South America, touched at the Moluccas or Spice Islands, and returned home, around the Cape of Good Hope, November, 1580; having completed the voyage in a little less than three years.

13. *Who had previously circumnavigated the globe?*

Magellan, in 1520, while in the service of Spain, had sailed through the Straits which bear his name, and proceeded into the Pacific, as far as the Philippine Islands, on one of which he was killed by the natives. One of his captains conducted the remainder of the voyage, and reached Spain, September 15, 1522—nearly sixty years before Drake had performed a similar undertaking.

14. *Did England make any attempt to colonize the land so discovered?*

Not until the year 1579, when Sir Humphrey Gilbert made an ineffectual attempt.

Portuguese Discoveries, 1500.

15. *Who were the principal Portuguese discoverers?*

Cabral and Cortereal.

16. *What was Cabral's discovery?*

On his way to the East Indies, crossing the Atlantic to avoid

the delays of the African coast voyage, by accident he discovered Brazil, in the year 1500.

17. *How did he proceed?*

He took possession of the country in behalf of Portugal, and named it SANTA CRUZ, the Holy Cross, from the cross he erected there.

18. *What was the country afterward called?*

Brazil, from the abundance of red dye-wood found there.

19. *What voyage did Cortereal make in 1501?*

In 1501, Gaspar Cortereal, a Portuguese of noble birth, set out from Lisbon, at his own expense, with two ships, to discover new countries, and to find a northwest passage to India.

20. *What were his discoveries?*

He reached Newfoundland; and, discovering a bay on its southeast side, named it Conception Bay. He thence sailed as far as the mouth of the St. Lawrence River, and, landing on on the coast, named it Cortereal's Land. Supposing its southern part fit for cultivation, he called it TERRA LABRADOR,—the land for cultivation.

21. *Did he make a second voyage?*

The next year, Cortereal returned to Labrador, and still hoping to make the northwestern passage, he proceeded in that direction, and was never heard of afterward. A brother of his went in search of him, and shared the same fate.

22. *Who next made voyages in behalf of Portugal?*

In 1501, Amerigo Vespucci made an unsuccessful voyage to America. In 1502, Bastidas visited the coast of Paria and the Isthmus of Darien; and, during the same year, Vespucci, in company with Ojeda, made a second voyage; and, after touching at the places visited by Bastidas, proceeded to Hispaniola. These voyages effected nothing more than to increase the ardor for discovery among European adventurers.

French Discoveries, 1524—1608.

23. *What part of the New World did the French visit at an early period?*

The fishing-banks of Newfoundland.

24. *In 1524, who was commissioned to make discoveries?*

Verrazanni, a Florentine, under commission of Francis I.

25. *What part of the coast did he explore?*

The coast of North Carolina, Delaware, and Rhode Island. He called the whole country New France,—a name afterward confined to Canada.

26. *What voyages did James Cartier make, in 1534 and 1535?*

Two voyages to the northern part of the continent,—in the first of which he explored the Gulf, and in the latter the river St. Lawrence, which names he gave them; he likewise named the present city of Montreal.

27. *In 1540, who was appointed Viceroy of New France?*

Lord Roberval, who sailed to the country for the purpose of colonizing it, but was prevented doing so on account of the severity of the climate and other difficulties.

28. *Where were two Huguenot settlements subsequently made by the French?*

One at Port Royal, in the present State of South Carolina, 1562; and another on the St. John's River, Florida, 1565.

29. *What became of these Colonists?*

Those of Carolina, after much suffering from hunger and disease, returned to France; while those of Florida were mostly massacred by the Spaniards from St. Augustine.

30. *When, and where, was the first permanent French settlement made?*

In 1605, De Monts planted a colony at Port Royal, in Nova Scotia.

31. *Who made the first permanent French settlement in Canada?*

Champlain, who founded the City of Quebec, in 1608, and discovered the lake which still bears his name.

Spanish Discoveries.

32. *What two-fold honor belongs to Spain?*

That of discovering America by Columbus, and of first penetrating to the Pacific by Magellan.

33. *After the death of Columbus, how did Spain divide her American discoveries?*

Into two governments;—one including North America as far South as the Gulf of Darien; the other, the whole of South America.

34. *Whom did she send out to colonize the southern region?*

Ojeda was sent to colonize the region, and to convert the natives.

35. *Did he succeed?*

No; the Indians resisted, and the greater portion of his followers perished from disease.

36. *Whom did the survivors choose as their leader, and at what place did they form a feeble settlement?*

They chose Vasco Nuñez Balboa for their commander, and settled at Santa Maria el Antigua.

37. *What other distinguished man was amongst them?*

Pizarro,—afterward celebrated as the conqueror of Peru.

The Pacific Ocean, 1513.

38. *In 1513, what great discovery did Balboa make?*

While searching for gold on the top of one of the Andes, he beheld, for the first time, the mighty Pacific.

39. *What did he do?*

Falling upon his knees, he thanked God for unfolding to him this great discovery. Then descending to the shore, and ad-

vancing with sword and buckler till the water reached his waist, he took possession of the ocean in the name of the king, his master, and declared it under the protection of his arms ; for many years afterward it was called the Southern Ocean.

40. *What became of him four years after this ?*

Under a feigned charge of treason, he was executed by order of Pedrarias, who had superseded him as Governor of Darien.

Mexico, 1517.

41. *What Spaniard explored the coast of Mexico ?*

In 1517, while Velasquez was Governor of Cuba, Cordova was sent to explore Mexico.

42. *What effect did Cordova's discovery produce upon Velasquez ?*

It induced him to send out an expedition under the command of Grijalva. This returned with so rich a cargo, that Velasquez was prompted to attempt the conquest of the country.

Cortez, 1519.

43. *When, and under whom, did the second Spanish expedition set out ?*

In the year 1519, under the command of Hernando Cortez, from the Island of Cuba.

44. *At what places did it land ?*

At Tobasco and San Juan d'Ulloa.

45. *How did Cortez proceed ?*

After Cortez had destroyed his ships, he marched to the city of Mexico, and seized Montezuma, the king.

46. *What happened shortly afterward ?*

Montezuma died.

47. *What effect did this event have upon the Mexicans ?*

Exasperated by the death of their king, they rose upon the Spaniards, and drove them from the city with a heavy loss.

48. *To what was the preservation of the routed army due ?*

To the bravery of its commander, Cortez, who, rushing into the thickest of the battle, killed the standard-bearer of the Mexican army, and bore away his standard.

49. *What effect did this have upon his enemies?*

They fled in confusion and dismay, while he retreated unharmed. In 1521, Mexico was recaptured by the Spaniards.

Florida and Carolina, 1512—1525.

50. *When, and by whom, was Florida visited?*

In 1512, by Ponce de Leon, a Spaniard.

51. *What induced him to make the voyage?*

The belief that Florida contained the fabled Fountain, which could bestow youth on old age and immortality on life.

52. *Why did he name the country Florida?*

On account of its floral appearance; or, because he discovered it on Easter Sunday, called by the Spaniards, Pascua Florida.

53. *What Spaniard next visited Florida, and what happened?*

In 1520, Vasquez de Ayllon made an unsuccessful voyage to that part of Florida now called South Carolina. Having enticed a crowd of the natives on board his ships, he sailed for Hayti, intending to sell them as slaves.

54. *What happened?*

One of his vessels foundered at sea, while so many died on board the other, that the adventure proved unprofitable.

55. *Did Vasquez make any other attempt upon the country?*

In 1525, under a commission of Charles V., he attempted to settle that portion of Carolina which he had robbed of its natives.

56. *What was the result?*

His largest ship was stranded, and his men were killed by the natives near the place where his former treachery had been

committed. The portion of Carolina thus discovered was called by the D'Ayllon, Chicora.

57. *Who next visited Florida?*

In 1528, Narvaez landed in Florida, and attempted to conquer the country.

58. *With what result?*

Out of an army of three hundred Spaniards, all were killed or wasted away but four or five, who returned to Spain.

De Soto.

59. *In 1539, what famous Spaniard attempted the conquest of Florida?*

Ferdinand de Soto, who had been the companion of Pizarro in the conquest of Peru.

60. *Describe the manner and place of his first landing.*

With six hundred men, clad in complete armor, he landed at Tampa Bay, on the western coast of Florida.

61. *What did his army take with them?*

They took with them a forge, with which to make new weapons when needed, and a drove of hogs, which supported themselves by feeding in the woods.

62. *How did he and his followers spend the first six months?*

In wandering over the territory now comprised in Alabama and Georgia.

63. *What was the character of the Indians they met?*

They were generally peaceful and unoffending.

64. *How did the Spaniards treat them?*

With the greatest cruelty,—exactng whatever they wanted; forcing them to carry their baggage; and, on the slightest suspicion, setting fire to their villages, cutting off their hands, throwing them to blood-hounds, or burning them alive.

65. *In 1540, what point did De Soto reach?*

The site now occupied by the city of Mobile. Here the natives resisted the extravagant demands of De Soto, and a

battle ensued, in which he killed twenty-five hundred of the Indians with a loss of only eighteen of his own men.

66. *With what did he meet at Pensacola?*

He there met ships from Cuba, with supplies for his exhausted army.

Discovery of the Mississippi, 1541. De Soto's Death, 1542.

67. *Whither did De Soto now bend his course?*

He now bent his course to the northwest, and, in latitude 34°, he was the first European who discovered the Mississippi, April 25th, 1541.

68. *What course did he now pursue?*

A westerly path, until he reached the Wachita.

69. *Where, and when, did he die?*

Descending that stream to its junction with the Red River, at the mouth where it mingles with the waters of the Mississippi, De Soto died, May 21st, 1542.

70. *What does Bancroft say of his burial?*

"To conceal his death, his body was wrapped in a mantle, and in the stillness of midnight was silently sunk in the middle of the stream. The discoverer of the Mississippi slept beneath its waters. He had crossed a large part of the continent in search of gold, and found nothing so remarkable as his burial-place."

71. *What became of the surviving Spaniards?*

They erected a forge, made nails of the fragments of iron in their camp, built some frail barks without decks, and in these descended the Mississippi.

72. *What point was finally reached?*

About half the original number reached the Mexican coast.

Expulsion of the French from Florida, 1565.

73. *Whom did Philip II. of Spain send to drive out the French Huguenots from Florida?*

In 1565, he sent out Melendez to remove the French, and to introduce the cultivation of the sugar-cane.

NOTE.—The sugar-cane is a native of China, from which country it was carried to Arabia, thence to the Canaries and Madeira, and from the latter island to Florida and the West Indies, in 1565.

74. *Where did Melendez land, and on what day?*

On St. Augustine's day, September 5, 1565, he reached Florida, and laid the foundation of the city of St. Augustine, by forty years the oldest permanent settlement of any within the limits of our Republic.

75. *What notice did Melendez give the French?*

That he had come, "with strict orders from the king, to gibbet all the Protestants in those regions; that every Frenchman, who was a Catholic, he would spare; but that every heretic should die."

76. *Did he execute his threat?*

Without distinction of age or sex, on the 21st of September, 1565, he murdered all the Huguenots in Fort Carolina.

De Gourgues, 1568.

77. *By whom was vengeance taken on the Spaniards?*

Their wanton cruelty was avenged by De Gourgues, a brave adventurer of Gascony. Having fitted out three ships for the purpose, with the aid of friends, he succeeded in surprising the Spanish settlement, May, 1568.

78. *What did he do with the prisoners taken?*

He hanged every one of them, and placed this inscription over them: "I do this, not as unto SPANIARDS or MARINERS, but as unto TRAITORS, ROBBERS, and MURDERERS."

79. *What became of De Gourgues?*

Too weak to retain his position, he returned to France, and left the whole country in possession of the Spaniards.

80. *What were now included in the Spanish possessions?*

All the West India Islands, together with that portion of

the continent lying on the Carribean Sea and the Gulf of Mexico.

CHAPTER III.

SETTLEMENTS — VIRGINIA, MASSACHUSETTS, NEW YORK, NEW HAMPSHIRE, CONNECTICUT, RHODE ISLAND, NEW JERSEY, MARYLAND, DELAWARE, PENNSYLVANIA, NORTH AND SOUTH CAROLINA, AND GEORGIA.

Sir Humphrey Gilbert, 1578.

1. *How long was it after its discovery, before the English made any permanent settlement in America?*

One hundred and fifteen years; during the reign of Queen Elizabeth.

2. *Who were the leading adventurers commissioned by her to make settlements?*

Sir Humphrey Gilbert and Sir Walter Raleigh.

3. *When was a patent granted to Gilbert, and what were its conditions?*

In 1578, a patent was granted him, to discover and possess all remote heathen and barbarous lands in North America, unoccupied by any Christian prince or people.

4. *What was guarantied to those who should settle the country?*

That they should enjoy the privileges of free citizens and natives of England.

5. *What was enjoined upon the patentee, or person receiving the patent?*

That he was to acknowledge the authority of the sovereign of England, and pay *one fifth* of all the gold and silver obtained.

6. *In Gilbert's first attempt, what happened?*

He put to sea, but was obliged to return.

7. *In his second attempt, to what place did he proceed?*

To Newfoundland, of which he took possession, by raising a pillar inscribed with the British arms.

8. *What disaster did he meet with?*

The largest of his three vessels was wrecked, and all her crew perished near the mouth of the Kennebeck.

9. *While the ship was foundering, with what noble sentiment did he encourage his crew?*

He admonished them to remember that "they were as near heaven at sea as on land."

Sir Walter Raleigh, 1584.

10. *In 1584, who obtained an extensive tract of land from Queen Elizabeth?*

Sir Walter Raleigh, brother-in-law of Gilbert.

11. *Whom did Raleigh send, under his patent, to make settlements in America?*

Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow, who visited Roanoke Island; and on their return to England, gave so flattering an account of the country, that the queen was pleased to bestow upon it the name of Virginia.

12. *Did Raleigh make any further attempts to establish a Colony?*

Yes; in 1585, Raleigh sent out Sir Richard Grenville, who left a colony under Ralph Lane, on Roanoke Island.

13. *What became of this Colony?*

After a year of great trouble, the settlers were carried back to England, by Sir Francis Drake, on his voyage of circumnavigating the globe.

14. *Did Raleigh send out a third Colony?*

In 1587, he sent out a third colony to the Island of Roanoke.

15. *What was its fate?*

Being in want of supplies, the colonists sent Captain White, their governor, to England, to procure assistance; but the threatened invasion of that country by the famous Spanish Armada, prevented his return to the colonists for three years.

16. *On his return to the Colonies, what did he find?*

Not one of the colonists to tell their fate.

17. *What did he now do?*

He returned to England, leaving not an English settler in America.

18. *How did this unfortunate issue affect Raleigh?*

He was so much distressed and annoyed by these repeated failures, that he sold his patent to a company of London merchants, in the year 1589.

19. *What was the subsequent career of Raleigh?*

His life was an eventful one; he twice visited Guiana, in South America, and was the first to introduce the popular use of tobacco to the European world. After the accession of James I. to the English throne, Raleigh got into disfavor with that king, and on a charge of treason was beheaded, October, 1618.

20. *Did the London merchants, to whom Raleigh sold, attempt to colonize?*

They made no attempts further than carrying on a small traffic with the natives.

21. *When was the next expedition sent forth?*

In 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold, with thirty-two men, sailed from Falmouth on the western coast of England, and crossing the Atlantic, reached the American coast near Nahant, by a shorter and more direct course than any one before had made.

22. *From this place, what direction did he take?*

He went to the south, and discovered and gave name to Cape

Cod, which was the first ground in New England ever trod by Englishmen.

23. *At what place did he leave a colony?*

Entering Buzzard's Bay, he found a fertile island, which he called Elizabeth, in honor of his queen. He built a fort and storehouse there, but the natives appearing hostile, his Colony refused to remain; and he returned to England, making the passage in five weeks, the shortest then known.

French Settlements, 1605.

24. *In 1603, what grant of American territory did the King of France make?*

Henry IV. of France, granted to De Monts all the North American territory, from the 40° to the 46° north latitude. The patentee was required "to colonize, to rule, and to Christianize the country."

25. *What attempts were made to do so?*

In 1605, De Monts made a settlement in Acadia, at Port Royal, and in 1608 Champlain laid the foundation of Quebec.

North and South Virginia, 1606.

26. *How did James I. of England regard these French settlements, and what did he do?*

Regarding them as encroachments upon his claims, he divided the country between the 34th and 45th degrees of latitude, into two divisions, and granted them to two companies—the one called the LONDON COMPANY, and the other the PLYMOUTH COMPANY.

27. *What territory was assigned to those Companies respectively?*

To the London Company was assigned the territory between the latitude 34° and 41° north, called South Virginia; to the Plymouth Company was assigned the territory between 41° and 45° north, called North Virginia.

28. *When and by whom did this Company make the first settlement?*

In May 23, 1607, by Captain Newport, at the head of 105 adventurers.

29. *Where was it begun?*

In South Virginia, on the Powhattan, or James River, at a spot which, in honor of King James, was called Jamestown.

30. *What occurred during the voyage?*

The voyage lasted upward of four months. Dissensions arose among the leading persons, and John Smith, their best man, was put in irons.

31. *How was the Colony to be governed?*

By seven persons,—to be appointed by the Supreme Council in England, with power to choose a President from among themselves.

32. *On their arrival, how were affairs settled?*

The seven councilors, who had been appointed in England, chose Edward Wingfield as their President.

Captain Smith and Pocahontas.

33. *What was done with Captain Smith?*

He was released from prison, and, taking his place in the council, during the second year of the government was chosen president.

34. *What is related of Smith?*

He had distinguished himself in many adventures; had commanded a company of cavalry in the Austrian army, in a war with the Turks; had been taken prisoner, and sent to Constantinople as a slave, and from that condition had extricated himself.

35. *What was his character?*

He was a man of undaunted courage, romantic disposition, and ardent spirit of enterprise. His superior talents and un-

wearied exertions in behalf of the settlers have caused him to be styled the Father of the colony.

36. *What happened to Smith during an exploring voyage?*

He was taken prisoner by a body of two hundred Indians; but he so charmed them by his arts and valor, that they released him. He was soon after taken by another party of three hundred, who carried him in triumph before Powhatan, the greatest chief in that region.

37. *What was done with him?*

Sentence of death was pronounced upon him: his head was placed on a stone,—his executioners, with uplifted clubs, were about beating out his brains, when Pocahontas, the favorite daughter of the chief, rushed forward, and placing her head upon that of the captive, appeared determined to share his fate. Powhatan relented, and set the prisoner free.

38. *What service did Pocahontas, two years after, perform for the Colony?*

She discovered to Captain Smith a plot formed by the Indians for the destruction of the Colony, and by this means prevented the catastrophe.

39. *What is further related of her*

With the consent of her father, she was afterward married to Mr. Rolfe, a respectable planter of Virginia. She accompanied her husband to England, was instructed in the Christian religion and baptized. She returned to America; and, on a second visit to England, died there, in her twenty-second year. She left one son, from whom are descended some of the most respectable families in Virginia.

40. *What was the state of the Colony in 1608?*

Disease and famine had greatly diminished their numbers, but new arrivals occurring, they were increased to two hundred.

41. *What became of Captain Smith?*

Having been severely injured by an explosion of gunpowder,

he returned to England in 1609. The colonists being reduced to the number of sixty persons, determined to follow him.

42. *Did they fulfill their intention?*

No; meeting Lord Delaware, who, as governor, arrived in 1610, they were induced to return; and, in 1629, their numbers were increased by the arrival of two hundred and sixteen new settlers, principally adventurers in search of gold.

43. *What expedient was adopted to induce them to settle permanently?*

Young women were sent out from England, and sold to them as wives,—a wife sold at a hundred pounds of tobacco, valued at about \$60. When a man got a bad one, he was said to “*have smoked for it.*”

44. *What was the commencement of Slavery in British America?*

In 1620, twenty negroes, in a Dutch ship, were carried to Virginia, and sold as slaves.

45. *To what did the colonists now turn their attention?*

To agricultural pursuits, particularly to the culture of tobacco.

46. *What kind of persons did King James send to the Colony at this time?*

Convicts, and all idle and disorderly persons, who were in custody for their offenses.

47. *What English commander was sent to destroy Port Royal and the other French settlements in Acadia?*

Captain Argall was sent from Jamestown, and succeeded in destroying those settlements.

48. *What did he do on his way back?*

He visited the Dutch settlement at Manhattan, and took possession of the country in the name of King James, and required it to acknowledge the supremacy of the Governor of Virginia.

New York settled by the Dutch, 1614.

49. *What is said of the commerce of Holland during the 17th century?*

The commerce of Holland, during the 17th century, was more extensive and prosperous than that of any other European state. In 1602, the Dutch East India Company was formed, and its merchants soon established a lucrative trade with India and the Oriental isles.

50. *What distinguished English navigator did the Company employ, and what discoveries did he make for them?*

They employed Henry Hudson, an Englishman, who, in 1609, while searching for a northwest passage to India, discovered the river, in the present State of New York, which bears his name. He proceeded up this river a few leagues above Albany, and then, retracing his course, returned homeward.

51. *What happened to him while returning to Holland?*

He was driven by distress into Dartmouth, England, where he was detained as a British subject.

52. *What claim did the English make upon him, and how did they employ him?*

Claiming him as their subject, they sent him on his fourth voyage to America. In this voyage he discovered the noble bay which bears his name

53. *What afterward became of him?*

During the winter of 1610, he was shut up by ice in the bay he had discovered; and when, in the spring, he was preparing to return home, his men—becoming dissatisfied at his conduct—set him adrift in a shallop, with his son and seven infirm men. He was never heard of more.

54. *What settlements did the Dutch now make in America?*

In 1613, they erected a fort on the southern extremity of Manhattan Island; in 1615, they built Fort Orange on the present site of Albany. In 1633, having purchased a tract of

land of the Pequot Indians, they established a trading-house on the Connecticut River, where Hartford now stands. This place they called the *House of Good Hope*.

55. *What name did they give to their American territory?*

The name of Nova Belgia, or New Netherlands. Their settlement on Manhattan Island they named New Amsterdam.

Anecdote.—MANHATTAN, in the Indian language, means "The Place of Drunkenness,"—so called by the Indians, because, when Hudson first visited them at this spot, he got them all drunk upon what they called the "fire-water." This island, on which the City of New York now stands, the Indians originally sold to the Dutch for twenty-four dollars.

56. *When did the Dutch surrender New Netherlands to the English?*

In 1664, Charles II. of England, then at war with the Dutch, granted to his brother, the Duke of York, the whole country from the Connecticut to the shores of the Delaware River. The Dutch governor was compelled to yield the country to England; and in compliment to the Duke of York, the Colony was called New York.

The Settlement of Massachusetts, Dec. 21st, 1620.

57. *What caused the settlement of Massachusetts?*

The persecutions practiced in England, on account of religious opinions.

58. *What did the government of England require?*

It required a strict observance of the rites established in the Church of England, and enacted severe laws against non-conformity.

59. *Who were the Puritans?*

A class of dissenters from the Church of England, who professed to practice what they called a purer form of worship. They were greatly persecuted in England, and determined to emigrate therefrom.

60. *Whither did a portion of them emigrate, and under whose lead?*

Under the lead of John Robinson, they emigrated to Hol-

land ; but becoming dissatisfied with their residence there, they were induced to seek an asylum in America.

61. *What promise was made them by King James ?*

That they should enjoy religious liberty in America, while they remained peaceable subjects.

62. *Under this promise, what did they do ?*

They procured two small vessels—the Speedwell and the Mayflower, and, with a part of their congregation, embarked for America. Robinson remained in Holland with those who did not emigrate ; the others embarked under the lead of Brewster, one of their elders.

63. *Describe the proceedings of the emigrants.*

On the morning of the 22d of July, 1620, having received the benediction of Robinson, at the seashore, they departed from Delft-Haven, in Holland. On their way to America they touched at Southampton, in England, and sailed thence on the 5th of August. Twice were they obliged to put back to repair the Speedwell, which, proving unseaworthy, was finally abandoned. It was not until the 6th of September, 1620, that they took their last departure from England in the May Flower.

64. *In what part of America did they intend to settle ?*

In the southern portion of New York ; but the Dutch captain who navigated their ship, through ignorance or design, took them as far north as Massachusetts.

65. *Before landing, what written constitution did they form for themselves ?*

On the 11th of November, 1620, a convention of forty-one of their number, on board the May Flower, framed and signed the first written constitution for America. They took upon themselves the power “to enact, constitute, and frame such just and equal laws, acts, ordinances, constitutions, and offices, as should be thought meet and convenient for the general good of the Colony.”

66. *When and where did they now land?*

After exploring the coast, they landed, on the 21st of December, to the number of one hundred and one, at a place called by the Indians, Patuxet, to which they gave the name of New Plymouth.

67. *How did the Plymouth Colony succeed?*

Their sufferings and difficulties were extreme; but by perseverance, they were enabled to overcome the rigors of their situation.

68. *With what Indian Chief did they form a treaty?*

With Massasoit, from whom Massachusetts takes its name. This treaty lasted fifty years.

69. *When was the colony of Massachusetts Bay founded?*

In 1628, by John Endicott, who formed a settlement at Salem.

70. *When, and by whom, was Boston first settled?*

In 1630, by fifteen hundred persons, under John Winthrop

71. *Were the Puritans tolerant to others in religion?*

No; as yet the true principles of religious liberty were not generally understood. They became the intolerant persecutors of all who differed with them in religious worship.

New Hampshire, 1623.

72. *When was New Hampshire first settled?*

In 1623, at Dover and Portsmouth, by persons sent out by John Mason and Ferdinando Gorges, to whom the country had been granted.

73. *After whom was the Colony named?*

After Hampshire County in England, from which John Mason had come.

74. *When were these settlements annexed to Massachusetts?*

In 1641, and continued so until 1680, when a separate government was instituted for New Hampshire.

Connecticut, 1633.

75. *When was Connecticut first settled?*

In January, 1633, the Dutch made a settlement at Hartford, and, in October of the same year, a party from New Plymouth settled at New Windsor.

76. *From what does Connecticut derive its name?*

From its principal river, called by the Indians, Quon-eh-ta-cut, which, in their language, signifies "Long River."

77. *Who was the principal founder of Connecticut?*

Rev. Thomas Hooker, with about one hundred persons, emigrated from Massachusetts, and, after a fatiguing march through woods and swamps, settled along the Connecticut River, in the year 1636.

78. *Of how many distinct Colonies did Connecticut originally consist?*

Of three, viz.: Connecticut, settled in 1633; Saybrook, in 1635, and New Haven, in 1637. These were afterward united under the title of the Connecticut Colony. A charter was granted in 1662, conferring upon the colonists unqualified power to govern themselves. When Charles II. deprived other colonies of their charters, that of Connecticut remained undisturbed.

Rhode Island, 1636.

79. *When, and by whom, was Rhode Island first settled?*

In 1636, by Roger Williams.

80. *Who was Roger Williams?*

He was a native of Wales, born 1598. He was educated at Oxford University; but becoming a Puritan in discipline, he was among the first to maintain the doctrine of religious toleration, and publicly declared, that "persecution, on account of religious opinions, is most lamentably contrary to the doctrine of Jesus Christ."

81. *When did he come to Massachusetts, and where did he settle?*

In 1631, when little more than thirty years of age, he emigrated to Massachusetts, and was shortly afterward invited to Salem as a religious teacher.

82. *What religious opinions did he proclaim, and how did they affect him with the Puritans?*

He advocated very liberal toleration in religion, and proclaimed that civil magistrates had no right to restrain or direct the consciences of men

83. *What caused his banishment from Massachusetts?*

His refusal to submit himself to the censure or control of the Colonial churches. For this he was sentenced by the Court of Massachusetts, in the year 1635, to depart from the colony and to embark for England.

84. *How did they proceed against him?*

Officers were sent to convey him to the vessel, but Williams had fled from Salem. After wandering for several months in the wilderness, "sorely tossed, in a bitter season, and not knowing what bread or bed did mean," he found kind friends among the Indians.

85. *Where did he finally settle?*

At the present city of Providence,—which place he so named as an expression of confidence in God's goodness.

86. *What settlers joined Williams, in 1638?*

In the spring of 1638, Anne Hutchinson and a number of her followers, driven from Massachusetts for preaching doctrines contrary to the Puritan faith, took refuge in the settlement of Roger Williams, and were kindly received by him. They purchased from the Indians the large island on Narragansett Bay, and settling there, named it Rhode Island, because of a fancied resemblance to the little Island of Rhodes, in the Mediterranean Sea.

Union of the New England Colonies, 1643.

87. *When did a Union of the New England Colonies take place, and what induced it?*

In 1643, the Indians threatening them on the one side, and the Dutch and French on the other, Plymouth, Massachusetts Bay, Connecticut, and New Haven formed a league, offensive and defensive, under the name of the "United Colonies of New England."

88. *What was their united population at this time?*

About twenty thousand whites, scattered through fifty villages.

89. *What were the terms of the Union?*

Each Colony retained the control of its own territory; but questions of war and peace, and all matters of common interest, were decided by a council of two commissioners from each. In war, each Colony was to furnish men and money in proportion to its population.

90. *Why was Rhode Island excluded from this Confederacy?*

Because it refused to become an appendage to Plymouth.

91. *How long did the Union last, and of what was it the germ?*

The Union lasted for about forty years, and its action during that period is said to have furnished the precedent for all the the subsequent Conventions, or Congresses, of the Colonies.

New Jersey, 1664.

92. *When, and where, was New Jersey first settled by the English?*

In 1664, at Elizabethtown.

93. *What other people had previously attempted settlements in this Province?*

In 1622, the Danes had established transient settlements on the Delaware and at Bergen, a few miles west of New York. In 1623, the Dutch had seated themselves at a place called

Nassau, near the mouth of Timber Creek. In 1630, Michael Paw, a Dutchman, bought from the Indians a section including Staten Island, and called it Pauvonnia. These settlements were made before any attempt on the part of the English.

94. *In honor of whom was the Province named?*

In honor of Sir George Carteret, one of its original proprietors, who had been Governor of Jersey, in England.

95. *In what year was its Charter granted?*

In 1665, a Charter was granted to the Proprietors of New Jersey.

96. *When did New Jersey become a Royal Province?*

In 1702, New Jersey became a Royal Province, and was united to New York; and so continued until 1738, when it became a distinct Province under its own Governor.

Maryland, 1634.

97. *When, and to whom, was a Charter for Maryland granted?*

In 1632, a charter was granted to Sir George Calvert, who had been created an Irish Peer, with the title of Lord Baltimore, in consequence of services rendered his sovereign, Charles I., of England.

98. *What was his object in making a settlement in Maryland?*

To provide an asylum for his Catholic brethren, who were, at this time, persecuted with relentless cruelty in England and Ireland.

99. *What were the peculiarities of the Maryland Charter?*

To the Proprietary and his heirs "absolute proprietorship in the soil was granted, together with the power of making necessary laws; but no law could be enacted without the advice, consent, and approbation of the freemen of the province, or their representatives, convoked in General Assembly, and no law was to be passed repugnant to the laws of England."

100. *Did Lord Baltimore himself visit Maryland?*

No; he died before the Charter was issued, but it was granted to his son and heir, Cecil Calvert, who, in 1632, commissioned his natural brother, Leonard Calvert, to settle the Colony.

101. *Describe the proceedings of Leonard Calvert.*

With two hundred persons, mostly Catholics, he sailed from England, in November, 1633, and early in the ensuing year, reached the coast of Maryland, near the mouth of the river Potomac. He there purchased a tract of land from the Indians, and named it Maryland, in honor of Henrietta Maria, the wife of his sovereign.

102. *What kind of laws did he establish for the Colony?*

He was instrumental in establishing many laws, very liberal for that period; but religious freedom was not granted to all, since none but Christian sects were tolerated in the Colony.

103. *What changes took place in the government?*

Cecil Calvert was deprived of his proprietorship, and Maryland became a Royal Province. In 1716, the Proprietary government was again established in his successor, the second Lord Baltimore.

Pennsylvania, 1681.

104. *When, and by whom, was Pennsylvania colonized?*

By Swedes, in 1643. The first English grant, however, was made by Charles II., in 1681, to William Penn, a Quaker.

105. *When did Penn immigrate to the Colony?*

In 1681, accompanied by a number of Quakers, who landed at Newcastle, and finally settled at Philadelphia.

106. *Did Penn rest his title to the territory on the Charter of the King alone?*

No; he purchased the land of the Indians, and by his wise and generous treatment of them secured the peace of the Colony.

107. *What became of William Penn?*

In 1718 he died, and his rights, falling to his heirs, were finally bought by the State of Pennsylvania, after the Revolution, for half a million of dollars.

Delaware, 1643.

108. *When, and by whom, was Delaware first settled?*

By the Swedes, in 1643. Its settlement by the English is comprised in that of Pennsylvania.

109. *From whom did the State receive its name?*

From Delaware Bay, on which it lies, and which received its name from Lord De la War, who died on board a vessel while descending the bay.

North Carolina, 1650.

110. *When, and where, was North Carolina first settled?*

About the year 1650, several planters from Virginia settled at the mouth of the Chowan River, in the present State of North Carolina.

111. *Were any previous attempts to settle the Province made by the English?*

Although the King of England, Charles I., had granted to Sir Robert Heath, in 1630, the large tract of country embraced within the 30th and 36th degrees of north latitude, yet no attempt to settle the province was made before that at Chowan.

112. *What second grant of the territory was made?*

In 1663, the entire country, from Virginia to Florida, was granted to Lord Clarendon and seven others.

113. *What celebrated Statesman and Philosopher, in conjunction, drew up a Constitution for the Colony?*

Lord Shaftesbury, one of the proprietors, in conjunction with Mr. Locke, drew up articles for the government of the Colony, called the "Fundamental Constitution."

114. *Did this Constitution ever go into operation?*

No: it proved unsatisfactory to all parties, and never went into operation.

115. *From whom does Carolina take its name?*

From Charles IX. (Carolus) of France, under whose reign the country was discovered in 1563, or 1564; others say from Charles I. of England, who first granted the province to Sir Robert Heath, under the name of Carolana.

South Carolina, 1670.

116. *Give the date and cause of the settlement of South Carolina?*

The northern Colony at Chowan not increasing rapidly, emigration was directed toward the south, which led to the settlement of South Carolina, on the western banks of the Ashley River, in 1670.

117. *From this spot to what place did the settlers remove?*

To Oyster Point, at the confluence of the Cooper and Ashley rivers, in 1680, where the foundation of the present city of Charleston was laid.

118. *How long did the two Provinces remain under the Proprietary Government?*

Until 1729, when the Proprietary Government was abolished, and the territory divided into the provinces of North and South Carolina, under Royal Governors.

Georgia, 1732.

119. *From whom does Georgia take its name?*

From George II. of England, under whose reign the colony was settled in 1732.

120. *What led to its settlement?*

The benevolent design of James Oglethorpe, to provide an asylum for the poor, the destitute, and the oppressed

121. *Where and when was the first settlement made?*

At Savannah in 1733, and rapidly increased in numbers.

122. *When did Georgia become a Royal government?*

In 1752, the settlers became dissatisfied with the government of their trustees, and a Royal government was established.

CHAPTER IV.

GOVERNMENT OF THE COLONIES—POPULATION, CLASSES, CHARACTER, AND MANNERS; MANUFACTURES, COMMERCE, AGRICULTURE, RELIGION, WITCHCRAFT, PRINTING AND LETTERS.

Government.

1. *What kind of government existed in the American Colonies before the Revolution?*

A colonial government, subdivided into Provincial, Proprietary, and Charter governments.

2. *What were the Provincial governments?*

The provincial governments were those under the immediate control of the king. Seven of the colonies became provincial governments, viz.: Virginia, New York, New Jersey, New Hampshire, North and South Carolina, and Georgia.

3. *What were the Proprietary governments?*

The proprietary governments were those under the immediate control of proprietors, who received grants, or letters patent from the king. They were originally, seven in number, viz.: Maryland, North and South Carolina, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware.

4. *What were the Charter governments?*

The charter governments were under the immediate control of the king; but had certain political rights secured to them by charter. The charter governments were Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island. So far as each colony existed under the grant or charter from the king, they may all be considered charter governments.

Population of the Colonies.

5. *What European nation furnished the largest proportion of American Colonists?*

England furnished the largest proportion; while Scotland, Ire-

land, Germany, Holland, France, Sweden, Denmark, and the Baltic region contributed largely to fill up the population of the Colonies.

6. *Did these settlers differ in religion, manners, and institutions?*

They differed widely at first; but their common dangers, pursuits, and modes of living, after a while united them in harmony, sympathy, and love.

7. *In 1701, what was the estimated population of the New England Colonies?*

In all, 120,000. Of this, 70,000 belonged to Massachusetts; 30,000 to Connecticut; 10,000 to Rhode Island; and 10,000 to New Hampshire.

8. *What was the population of the Middle and Southern Colonies?*

In all, 142,000; of which New York had 30,000; Pennsylvania, 20,000; New Jersey, 15,000; Maryland, 25,000; Virginia, 40,000; North Carolina, 5,000; and South Carolina, 7,000.

9. *How had the population of New England increased in fifty years?*

In 1755, New England contained a population of 385,000; Massachusetts Bay having 220,000; Connecticut, 100,000; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, 35,000; and New Hampshire, 30,000.

10. *How had the population of the Middle and Southern Colonies increased in the same time?*

They contained 661,000; Pennsylvania heading the list with 250,000; New York, 100,000; the Jerseys, 60,000; Virginia 85,000; Maryland, 85,000; North Carolina, 45,000; South Carolina, 30,000; and Georgia, 6,000. The New England, and other Colonies, containing, in the aggregate, a population of 1,046,000, having quadrupled in fifty years.

Classes of Population.

11. *How was the population divided as regards classes?*

Into four classes: I. The gentlemen, or better sort. II. The lower orders, or poorer sort. III. The indented servants, or apprentices. IV. The slaves.

12. *Who were the gentlemen, or better sort?*

The gentlemen, or better sort, were persons of honorable birth in the old country, who voluntarily immigrated to the Colonies to improve their fortunes, or to enjoy a free government.

13. *Who were the lower orders, or poorer sort?*

The lower orders, or poorer sort, were persons of lower birth; commonly artisans, laborers, and exiles from all parts of the world, who came voluntarily, to improve their condition. Among these, were the Huguenots from France; the Waldenses from Italy; the Calvinists from Switzerland, Bohemia, and the Rhine; and, in some cases, "the afflicted and wandering children of Israel."

14. *Who were indented servants?*

The indented servants, or apprentices, composed a very large class. They were made up of persons under age, or "shiftless vagabonds;" or the members of defeated parties, who were transported by those in power. The last were among the English Royalists, taken captive by the Parliamentary forces; or the Roman Catholics, conquered while fighting for the faith of Ireland.

15. *Who were the slaves?*

These were Indians, whom the colonists had taken in war; or negroes from Africa, sent into the Colonies chiefly by English, Spanish, and Portuguese slave traders.

16. *When were slaves first introduced into the respective Colonies?*

In 1620, they were first introduced into Virginia; into Massachusetts in 1638; into Connecticut and Rhode Island, about

1650; into New York in 1656; into Maryland, in 1663; into New Jersey in 1668; and into Delaware and Pennsylvania, in 1690. Their introduction into Carolina and Georgia was coeval with the settlement.

Character and Manners.

17. *What is said of the manners of the Southern colonists?*

They possessed a good deal of the frankness, hospitality, taste, and refinement, which distinguish the people of the South at the present day.

18. *What is said of their mode of living?*

The fertility of the soil made products so cheap, that it cost little to live. Most of them, therefore, enjoyed good living, and easy indolence.

19. *Whence did they procure their clothing?*

They procured nearly all their clothing from England; although they had the materials for making them at home. Their sheep furnished them with an abundance of the finest wool; and they are said to have sheared them mostly to keep them cool.

20. *What is said of the laws of the Puritan settlers of New England?*

While they show a great watchfulness over the interests, manners, and morals of the community, many of them strike us as equally amusing and intolerant.

21. *Mention some of the regulations of Connecticut?*

Every freeman who neglected to attend town meeting, was fined a sixpence, unless he had a good excuse. Boys playing during the public service, whether in the house or outside, were to be publicly whipped.

22. *What was ordered by the Colony of Connecticut, in 1647?*

In 1647, the colony of Connecticut ordered that no person under twenty years of age should use any tobacco without a

certificate from a physician ; and that all such as were addicted to its use, should take but one chew a day.

23. *What law was passed concerning tavern-keepers ?*

No man was allowed to keep a tavern, who was not reputable, and the owner of property.

24. *How were drunkards treated ?*

Their names were posted up in the ale-houses, and the keeper forbidden to sell them liquor.

Manufactures and Commerce.

25. *Did the settlers turn their attention to Manufactures and Commerce at an early period ?*

Necessity compelled them to do so at an early period ; but their attempts were very rude.

26. *What hindrance did England make ?*

England became jealous of the independent career of the colonists in regard to manufactured articles.

27. *What was the Navigation Act, and when was it passed by the English Parliament ?*

The first NAVIGATION ACT was passed in 1651. It forbade all importations into England, except in English ships, or those belonging to English Colonies. In 1660, unjust additions were made to this Act, and the Colonies were prohibited from exporting their chief productions to any country, except to England, or its dependencies.

28. *What resolution did the General Court of Massachusetts pass, in reference to the Navigation Act in 1676 ?*

That "it was an invasion of the rights and privileges of the subjects of his majesty in the colony—they not being represented in Parliament."

29. *What declaration did the British Parliament make, in 1719 ?*

That "the erecting any manufactories in the colonies, tended to lessen their dependence upon Great Britain."

30. *What Manufactures had New England engaged in?*

Almost every one made coarse cloth for domestic use. In Massachusetts, hats were manufactured in sufficient quantities to supply the home, and a large foreign demand; and shipbuilding was carried on extensively.

31. *State what England did to restrict the industrial pursuits of her Colonies.*

The manufacture of iron, steel, &c., and the exportation of hats from one Colony to another, were prohibited; the importation of sugar, rum, and molasses, was burdened with exorbitant duties; and the Carolinians were forbidden to cut down the pine trees of their forests, or to use their lumber, staves, tar or turpentine, for commercial purposes.

32. *At this time, to what did the trade of Great Britain with her American Colonies amount?*

To between three and four millions of dollars.

Agriculture.

33. *What attention was paid to Agriculture by the colonists?*

The first business of the settlers was to clear the forests, and supply themselves with food from the soil. The fertility of the land soon taught them to look to agriculture as a source of wealth, as well as of subsistence, it therefore became the leading object of industry in the colonies.

34. *What was early cultivated in Virginia?*

Tobacco was raised, and soon began to be exported. The year after their landing, the people gathered corn of their own planting, the seed of which they received from the Indians. Vineyards were attempted, and flax, hemp, barley, &c., were cultivated to a considerable extent.

NOTE.—Tobacco is an indigenous plant of America. Sir John Hawkins first carried it to England, in 1565; though we are indebted to Sir Walter Raleigh for its popular use. King James wrote against it his celebrated "Counter-Blast to Tobacco." "Its use," says he, "is loathsome to the eye, hateful to the nose, dangerous to the lungs; and in the black stinking fume thereof, nearest resembles the horrible Stygian smoke of the pit that is bottomless."

35. *When and where was Rye first raised?*

Rye was first raised in Massachusetts, in 1633.

36. *When and by whom were neat cattle first introduced?*

Neat cattle were introduced into New England by Mr. Winslow, in 1624. In 1629, 140 head of cattle, with horses, sheep, and goats were imported into Massachusetts Bay.

37. *How did they increase?*

In a few years they became so numerous as to supply all the wants of the inhabitants.

38. *What were the chief products of the Northern, Middle, and Southern Colonies?*

Grain, beef, pork, horses, butter, cheese, &c., were the chief products of the Northern Colonies; wheat, and other English grains, of the middle; tobacco, wheat, and rice, of the Southern.

39. *What was another important production of the South?*

In the South, large numbers of swine and cattle ran wild in the forests, living upon mast. These were taken, salted down, and exported to a considerable extent.

Religion.

40. *What was the special object of the New England planters in immigrating to America?*

The enjoyment of their religious opinions, and the free exercise of religious worship.

41. *Of what sects were they in doctrine and discipline?*

In doctrine they were Calvinists, but Congregationalists in discipline; each church maintaining the right to govern itself.

42. *When and where was the first Synod of the Puritan churches held in America?*

In 1637, at Newtown, Massachusetts.

43. *What persons attended the Synod, and what was its object?*

The Synod was composed of the teaching elders and messen-

gers of the several Puritan Churches; magistrates also were present, and spoke as they thought fit. Its object was to inquire into the conduct of Anne Hutchinson, who then taught doctrines contrary to the Puritan faith.

44. *What did the Synod do?*

After a session of two weeks, it condemned eighty-two erroneous opinions, which had been disseminated in New England.

45. *Where and when was the first Dutch Reformed Church introduced?*

Into New York, in the year 1642.

46. *When was the first Baptist Church formed, and where extended?*

The first Baptist Church in America was formed at Providence, in 1639, under Roger Williams. Their sentiments spreading into Massachusetts, in 1651, the General Court passed sentence against them, inflicting banishment for assisting in the promulgation of their doctrines.

47. *What is said of the religious revival of 1737?*

In 1738, a religious revival very extensively prevailed in New England; great numbers united themselves to the church, and testified by their conduct through life the genuineness of their profession.

48. *When did Whitefield come to America, and what effect did he produce?*

This celebrated pulpit orator came to America, in 1740, and produced great religious excitement by his singular powers.

49. *Did he found any sect in this country?*

He did not establish any particular sect in this country, although he gave rise to that of the Calvinistic Methodists in England.

50. *When did the Quakers appear in Massachusetts, and what did the Legislature do toward them?*

They made their appearance, in 1656, and the Legislature of

that Colony passed severe laws against them. No master of a vessel was allowed to bring any one of the sect into the State, on penalty of one hundred pounds.

51. *What still severer penalties were inflicted in 1657?*

In that year severer penalties were inflicted; such as cutting their ears, and boring their tongues with a hot iron, &c. They were at length banished, forbid to return on pain of death; and on refusing to go, were executed in 1659.

52. *What were Penn's religious views and tenets?*

Being himself a Quaker, he followed the views and tenets of that sect, especially in prohibiting an appeal to arms.

53. *What was a fundamental principle of Penn?*

That no one acknowledging his belief in one God, and living peaceably in society, should be molested for his opinions or practices.

54. *When was Episcopacy introduced?*

It was introduced into New York, in 1693; into New Jersey and Rhode Island, in 1702; into South Carolina, in 1703; and into Connecticut, in 1704.

55. *Was free, unrestricted Liberty of Conscience allowed by the laws of any of the Colonies?*

No; that liberty of conscience which "*permits every man to worship, or not to worship God, as he pleases,*" was completely recognized in no one of the Colonies, until after the American Revolution.

56. *What religious intolerance was practiced in the British Province of New York?*

Every Roman Catholic, entering the province, was to be hanged; while every Protestant, who did not conform to the Church of England, was visited by certain penalties.

57. *How was it in Maryland?*

Maryland, by an Act in 1649, proclaimed death to all who denied the Trinity; and fine, scourging, imprisonment, and ban

ishment, to all who denied the blessed Virgin, or the holy Apostles or Evangelists. When the Catholics lost power, they, in turn, were forbidden from having public service; and their officers, as well as teachers, both public and private, were suspended.

58. *How in Virginia?*

They banished all Puritans from among them, and inflicted a hundred pounds fine upon any shipmaster who should bring a Quaker into the dominion. Baptists were also subject to fine; and none but the Church of England men were tolerated.

59. *How in Carolina?*

Though the Constitution tolerated those who "acknowledged a God, and that he was to be publicly and solemnly worshiped," yet, provision was made for the Church of England out of the public purse.

60. *How in Rhode Island?*

Even in Rhode Island, where Roger Williams had preached the most liberal doctrines, a law existed, disqualifying Roman Catholics from holding any office of public trust.

61. *Was this intolerant spirit confined to any particular Colony?*

By no means; an almost universal strictness and intolerance prevailed, as well in religion as in morals.

62. *How was it in the other Colonies?*

While condemning the overstrictness of the Puritans, the Virginians had very severe laws against "mercenary attorneys," "burgesses disguised with overmuch drink," tippling houses, and Sunday traveling. Maryland had laws against profanity; and amid many similar laws, South Carolina declared it to be "a base and vile thing for any one to plead for money."

Witchcraft.

63. *What was the belief in Witchcraft?*

A belief that the person charged with being a witch was in

league with the devil, and, as his agent, could effect any bad purpose.

64. *Was this belief confined only to the ignorant?*

At this period, it was held by many great, good, and wise men in the most enlightened parts of the world. Sir Matthew Hale, Lord Chief Justice of England; the pious Richard Baxter, Robert Boyle, and men of all stations and religions, believed in the existence of witches, and advocated laws for their severest punishment. More than 130,000 persons were executed in England, Scotland, France, and Germany, for this crime alone.

65. *Were those accused of the crime of witchcraft tried and punished in any of the other Colonies than Massachusetts?*

In almost every one of them laws are to be found for their punishment. The crime was recognized by the Common Law of England, which was the Common Law of all the Colonies.

Printing and Letters.

66. *When, and by whom, was the first printing in New England executed?*

The first printing was done in 1639, by one Day. The proprietor of the press was a clergyman, named Glover, who died on his passage to America.

67. *What were the first articles published?*

The first article published was The Freeman's Oath; the second, an Almanac; and the third, an edition of the Psalms.

68. *What did John Eliot have printed?*

John Eliot, the celebrated missionary, having translated the Bible into the Indian language, had it printed at Cambridge, in 1664.

69. *When was the first newspaper established?*

The first newspaper in North America, called "The Boston Weekly News Letter," was established in 1704.

70. *Where were ten others established in the next fifty years?*

Four were established in New England, two in New York, two in Pennsylvania, one in South Carolina, and one in Maryland.

71. *What is said of the books published?*

The number of books published was also considerable. They were, however, executed in a coarse style, and were generally books of devotion, or for the purposes of education.

72. *Had England, about this time, very far advanced in Literature and Science?*

Yes; she had made great advances.

73. *Mention some of her distinguished men?*

In Science and Philosophy, there were Bacon, Harvey, Newton, and Locke. In Poetry—Spenser, Shakspeare, Milton, Dryden, Swift, Pope, and their cotemporaries. In History—Bale, Raleigh, Fuller, Hakluyt, Purchas, the Greek and Latin Historians translated into English; and, still later, Hume, Robertson, Gibbon, and Middleton. In Letters—Richardson, Fielding, Sterne, Smollet, Steele, Addison, and a host of others.

74. *Were the works of these men well known in the Colonies?*

By the “better sort” of persons they were not only known, but very attentively studied. They could afford to purchase few books; but what they did own were “read, marked, learned, and inwardly digested.”

75. *How was this evinced as regards the men who prepared and carried out the American Revolution?*

In the general ability, eloquence, and power of their writings

CHAPTER V.

THE ENGLISH REVOLUTION, ABROGATION OF THE NEW ENGLAND CHARTERS, INDIAN COLONIAL WARS, FRENCH WAR, WASHINGTON, BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT, ATTACK UPON THE FRENCH POSSESSIONS, ENGLISH POSSESSIONS IN AMERICA.

English Revolution, 1688.

1. *What had tended to increase the emigration from England to America?*

The arbitrary measures of the Stuart family, who had occupied the throne of England since the first permanent settlement of the English in North America.

2. *How did that family conduct themselves toward the Colonies?*

They deprived them of their Charters, and placed governors over them, whose oppressive measures gave great dissatisfaction.

NOTE.—*The Stuart family* takes its name from Henry Stuart, (Lord Darnley,) from whom were descended James I., the two Charleses, and James II.

The English Revolution, known in English history as "The Glorious Revolution of 1688," drove James II. from the throne on account of the arbitrary measures of himself and family. His daughter Mary married William, Prince of Orange, and these two ascended the English throne, under the titles of William III. and Mary II. This revolution was considered a great triumph of popular rights. Absolute power, passive obedience, the divine right of kings—all these maxims were maintained by the Crown from the time of King John, A. D. 1199, to the dethronement of James II., 1688. The people and Parliament now triumphed; and the blessings of civil and religious liberty have been gradually enlarging in England ever since.

Abrogation of New England Charters, 1683.

3. *In what year were the New Englanders deprived of their Charters, and by whose influence was it accomplished?*

In 1683, by Edward Randolph and others, who prejudiced the King and Council against the Colonies.

4. *When the Colonists were commanded to surrender their Charters, what was done in Connecticut?*

Captain Wadsworth concealed the Charter of that Colony in a hollow oak in Hartford, and thus prevented its surrender.

5. *What was done with regard to the Charter of Massachusetts Bay?*

The old Charter was refused; but a new one, less favorable to liberty, was granted them in 1692, uniting the Colonies of Massachusetts Bay and Plymouth, under the name of Massachusetts, and annexing to it the Provinces of Maine and Nova Scotia.

6. *What were the principal features in the new Charter?*

The appointments to the principal offices were taken from the people, and vested in the Crown; the only privilege allowed them, was the right of choosing their own representatives.

7. *What was done to render the Charter more acceptable to the people?*

Sir William Phipps, a native of New England, was appointed governor.

8. *How did the English revolution affect the Colonists?*

It partially restored their liberties, but subjected them to the evils of a war with the French and Indians.

Indian Colonial Wars, 1637—1744.

9. *Previous to the American Revolution, in what wars had the Colonies engaged?*

In several, viz.: the Pequot war, in 1637; King Philip's war, in 1676; King William's war, in 1690; Queen Anne's war, in 1702; and King George's war, in 1744. These were mostly carried on between the English, French, and Indians, in the northern Colonies; while in the South, the Tuscaroras, the Yamassees, and the Cherokees, were engaged in wars with the southern Colonists.

10. *Describe the Pequot war.*

The Pequot war, commencing June 1st, 1637, was an insurrection, on the part of the Pequot Indians, to exterminate the

white inhabitants of Connecticut. The people of Hartford, Windsor, and Weathersfield, under the command of Captain Mason, assisted by five hundred Narragansett Indians, surprised the Pequots, burnt their fort, and utterly destroyed them.

11. *Describe King Philip's war.*

King Philip's war, commenced in 1675, and carried on for more than a year, was unparalleled for cruelty and suffering, by any other in the history of the Colonies.

12. *With whom was this war waged?*

With Philip, who had succeeded his father Massassoit, as Chief of the Wampanoags, and with the neighboring tribes, of which Philip was leader.

13. *What prompted the Indians to hostilities?*

The encroachments of the Whites, and the consequent loss to the Indians of their beautiful hunting grounds.

14. *How was Philip killed?*

He was shot by a revengeful Indian.

15. *Did this end the war?*

It did, with the Indians South and West ; but the tribes of Maine and New Hampshire continued hostile until 1678, when a treaty was concluded.

Expedition against St. Augustine, 1702.

16. *What attack was made on St. Augustine by Governor Moore of South Carolina?*

In May, 1702, Governor Moore of that Colony, proceeded against the Spanish Province of St. Augustine. The expedition, however, proved unsuccessful ; and so heavy was the expense incurred, that the Assembly, for the first time, resorted to the expedient of a paper currency.

17. *What other expedition was undertaken?*

In December, 1703, Governor Moore undertook an expedition against the Apalachian Indians, then in league with the

Spaniards. Their chief villages were desolated, and they and their territory rendered tributary to the English.

18. *What effect did this attack upon St. Augustine produce?*

It greatly excited the indignation of the French and Spanish, then at war with England, and they sent from Cuba five vessels and a large body of troops to subdue Carolina, and annex it to Florida.

19. *How was this squadron opposed by the Carolinians?*

The invading squadron crossed the bar of Charleston, May, 1706, and landed about eight hundred men at different points. Governor Johnson and Colonel Rhett, at the head of a few Carolinians, met the enemy and drove them back, after killing or capturing about three hundred of their number. One of their best vessels, with all its crew, was taken.

Tuscarora War, 1711.

20. *Describe the Tuscarora war of 1711.*

In 1711, the Tuscaroras of the inland region of North Carolina, and the Corees, further south and near the sea-board, deeming their territory too much encroached upon by the Whites, rose upon the German settlers along the Roanoke and Pamlico Sound, and spread death and desolation wherever they went.

21. *How were they chastised?*

Those who escaped the massacre, called upon their brethren of South Carolina; and Colonel Barnwell, with a party of South Carolinians and friendly Indians, was sent to the aid of North Carolina. He drove the Tuscaroras from their fortified town, in the present Craven county, and there made a treaty of peace with them.

22. *Did this end the war?*

No; the Indians accusing Colonel Barnwell's troops of violating the treaty, on their way home, recommenced hostilities

and a second requisition being made upon South Carolina for assistance, Colonel Moore, late in December, 1712, was sent to quell this second insurrection of the Tuscaroras

23. *Did he succeed?*

Yes; in March, 1713, with a few white men and a large body of friendly Indians, he met the Tuscaroras at their fort, in the present Green county, captured the fort, and took eight hundred prisoners.

24. *What became of the remainder of the Tuscaroras.*

They fled northward, and settled on the southern borders of Lake Ontario.

25. *What became of the Corees?*

A treaty of peace was made with them in 1715, and North Carolina never afterward suffered from Indian hostilities.

Yemassee War, 1715.

26. *Give an account of the Yemassee war of 1715?*

In April 26, 1715, a general Indian war broke out. The Yemassees had previously been in amity with the English, and the war commenced before the latter were aware of their danger. The frontier settlements were desolated. Port Royal was abandoned; Charleston itself was in danger, and the Colony seemed near its ruin.

27. *How, and by whom, was this insurrection subdued?*

In this fearful crisis, Governor Craven, of South Carolina, acted with equal wisdom and energy. He declared the province under martial law; and at the head of twelve hundred men, comprised of whites and faithful negroes, marched to meet the approaching enemy. The Yemassees were at first victorious; but, after several bloody encounters, they were defeated at Salkehatchie, May, 1715, and driven from their territory into that of the Spaniards, at St. Augustine.

28. *What became of the other tribes, that had not yet engaged in the war?*

The Cherokees and other tribes, that had not engaged in the war, returned to their hunting-grounds, deeply impressed with the strength and greatness of the white people.

King William's War, 1689.

29. *What gave rise to King William's war?*

James II. of England, the ejected king, having fled to France, that country espoused his cause, and thus a war broke out between the two powers, in which the American Colonies soon became involved.

30. *Name the important events of this war.*

The plundering of Port Royal by the English colonists, under Sir William Phipps; and the unsuccessful expedition against Canada.

31. *How long did the war continue?*

From 1689 to the peace of Ryswick, in 1697.

NOTE.—*The Peace of Ryswick* was so called, because it took place at Ryswick Palace, belonging to King William III., and situated between the Hague and Delft, in Holland. By this peace Louis XIV., of France, then at war with William III., acknowledged the latter, King of England.

Queen Anne's War, 1702.

32. *What war succeeded that of King William's?*

"Queen Anne's War;" known, in Europe, as the "War of the Spanish succession."

33. *What conquests were made by the English?*

Port Royal fell into the hands of the English a second time, and Nova Scotia became a British Province.

34. *How did the English colonists suffer?*

Frequent inroads were made upon them by the French and Indians; villages were burned, the inhabitants plundered and inhumanly murdered, or dragged into captivity in the wilderness.

35. *What was the length of Queen Anne's war?*

It continued for more than ten years, viz. : from 1702 to the Peace of Utrecht, in 1713.

King George's War, 1744.

36. *Did any other European war affect the Colonies?*

Yes; King George's War, commenced in 1744, commonly called the French and Indian War.

37. *For how long a period had the colonist been at peace?*

For thirty-one years, when they were again involved in a war that occurred between Great Britain and France, in the year 1744.

38. *What was the origin of the French and Indian war?*

The French and Indian war had its origin on this continent, in rival claims to the same territory.

39. *What is said of the French and English claims?*

The French claimed the most northern and western portion of the continent, by exploration and settlement; while the English based their right on the discovery made by the Cabots, in 1497.

40. *What measures were taken by the French, in order to secure their possessions?*

To secure their possessions the French established a chain of forts, stretching from the mouth of the Mississippi River to Lake Erie.

41. *What was the principal occurrence of this war in America?*

The capture of Louisburg from the French, on the 16th of June, 1745. This place is situated on Cape Breton, and having been fortified at great expense, was called the Gibraltar of America.

42. *What consequences followed the reduction of Louisburg?*

The Colonists were encouraged to attempt the conquest of all the French possessions in North America. This so exasperated the French, that, in 1746, they sent an armament under the Duke D'Anville to recapture Louisburg, and harass the colonists as much as possible.

43. *What was the force of this armament?*

This armament consisted of eleven ships of the line, thirty small vessels of war, and three transports, with three thousand regular troops, and forty thousand stand of arms for the use of the Canadians and Indians, and altogether was the largest expedition that had ever been sent to America.

44. *What was the result of this expedition?*

A long and disastrous passage, great mortality amongst the troops, and the death of both commanders. This so disheartened the French, that they returned without having accomplished any thing but alarming the colonists. In the year 1748, however, by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, Louisburg, to the great mortification of the colonists, was restored to the French.

45. *What were the effects of the French and Indian war on the Colonies?*

It materially checked their growth; large tracts of land were desolated; several towns were burned, and nearly eight thousand young men are said to have perished.

The Ohio Company, and the French Claims.

46. *What was the Ohio Company?*

The Ohio Company was an association of gentlemen, principally of Virginia, who obtained a grant of six hundred thousand acres on the Ohio River, for the purpose of establishing a fur trade with the Indians.

47. *How had this Company proceeded?*

They had surveyed the land, and built a few trading-houses; but the French, who considered this an encroachment on their

rights, after complaining to the Governors of New York and Pennsylvania, seized some of the traders, and, in 1750, imprisoned them at Presque Isle, in Lake Erie.

48. *What was the result of this hostile measure on the part of the French?*

Robert Dinwiddie, the Governor of Virginia, having laid the matter before the Assembly of that Colony, they determined to send a messenger to St. Pierre, the French Commandant, requiring him to withdraw from the territory.

Anecdote.—While the French and English were thus disputing about their respective lines of American territory, a messenger was sent from the Indian Councils to inquire, "What land they intended to leave the Indians?" "The English," said they, "claim all on one side of the Ohio River, and the French all on the other side. Where, then, did the Indian land lay?"

George Washington.

49. *Who was the person chosen to carry the message to St. Pierre?*

For this mission, George Washington was selected. He was born in Westmoreland County, Virginia, on the 22d of February, 1732, and was but twenty-one years of age when, in October, 1753, he undertook this journey to the French fort, on the Alleghany River.

50. *What was St. Pierre's answer to Governor Dinwiddie?*

He replied, that he was not empowered to discuss treaties, and that he acted under the authority of the Governor-general, Marquis du Quesne.

51. *How did the British Government act under these circumstances?*

It determined on four expeditions against the French; for which purpose troops were raised in the different Colonies, and forces sent from England; Washington was appointed Lieutenant-Colonel over the Virginia troops.

52. *What occurred to Washington in this position?*

Being sent against Fort du Quesne (the present Pittsburg), he threw his troops into a small fort which he had erected, and

named Fort Necessity. He was here attacked by a superior body of French, and July 4, 1754, was compelled to surrender, with the honorable privilege of returning with his troops to Virginia.

First Colonial Congress, June 19, 1754.

53. *What induced the holding of a Congress of the Colonies, during the year 1754?*

The British Ministry, perceiving that war with the French was inevitable, advised the Colonies to meet together, and unite for their common defense.

54. *What was done in accordance with this recommendation?*

All the Colonies were invited to send Delegates to a Convention at Albany. Only seven of them did so, viz.: New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, Pennsylvania, and Maryland. These, however, went into Convention on the 19th of June, 1754; and on the 4th of July, adopted a Constitution drawn up by Dr. Franklin, and ordered it to be laid before the Colonial Assemblies and the Imperial Board of Trade for ratification.

55. *What did the plan propose?*

It proposed a Federal Government, to be administered by a Chief Magistrate appointed by the King, and a Council of forty-eight members, chosen by the several Legislatures. The Council was to have power "to declare war, levy troops, raise money, regulate trade, conclude peace, and do other acts necessary for the public good."

56. *Was the plan accepted by the parties to whom it was submitted?*

No; the Assemblies considered it too *aristocratic*, giving to the Governor too much power; while the Board of Trade rejected it, as too *democratic*. The union, accordingly, did not take place.

NOTE.—*The Board of Trade* was established by the British Government, to have a general oversight of the American Colonies. It consisted of a President and seven Members, called *Lords of Trade*. The Board was always considered an instrument of oppression in the hands of Royalty.

General Braddock's Expedition, 1755.

57. *Who arrived in the Spring of 1755?*

In the Spring of the year 1755, General Braddock arrived from England with reinforcements.

58. *What were the plans of attack now determined on?*

General Braddock was to attack Fort du Quesne with two English regiments and the troops under Washington who acted as his aid; General Shirley was to lead the American Regulars and Indians against Niagara; the Northern Militia, under General Johnston, were to attack Crown Point; while Nova Scotia was to be invaded by Generals Monckton and Winslow.

59. *What befell Braddock and his troops?*

While pushing on at the head of his forces, regardless of the advice of Washington, he fell into an ambuscade of French and Indians, and was slain, together with sixty-four of his officers.

60. *What is said of Washington's conduct?*

Though exposed to the constant fire of the enemy, he was fortunately preserved unhurt; and covering the retreat of Braddock's forces with the Virginia troops, saved the army from total ruin.

Anecdotes.—Braddock was shot by Thomas Fancet, one of the Provincial soldiers, under the plea of self-preservation. Braddock had issued a positive order, that none of the soldiers should protect themselves behind trees, as the French and Indians did. Fancet's brother had done so; and, when Braddock perceived it, he struck him to the earth with his sword. Thomas, seeing his brother fall, shot Braddock in the back; after which, the Provincials fighting their own way, were saved from destruction.

Washington, in the same battle, was singled out by an Indian marksman, who shot at him fifteen times without effect. Years after the battle, the same Indian traveled many miles to see the great man whom Providence had thus protected, and to tell, with his own lips, the anecdote of Washington's preservation.

61. *What was the success of the other expeditions?*

The other expeditions were scarcely more successful. The one against Niagara was abandoned; and the other against Crown Point, under General Johnston, after a little skirmish-

ing with the French, returned to Albany, without having accomplished any thing.

Attack upon the French Possessions, 1756.

62. *When was war formally declared between England and France?*

In 1756, war was declared between the two countries; the French being commanded by the Marquis de Montcalm, and the English at first by the Earl of Loudon, and afterward by General Abercrombie.

63. *What was the principal event of the year 1756?*

In this year, Montcalm attacked and took Oswego, and with it the garrison, amounting to fourteen hundred men, and a great quantity of military stores and ammunition.

64. *Did the French continue successful?*

No; the next year, 1758, Louisburg, the Islands of Cape Breton and St. John's, and Fort Frontenac, fell into the hands of the British; and in 1759, Niagara was taken by Sir William Johnston, and Quebec by General Wolfe. The expedition against Fort Frontenac was commanded by Colonel Bradstreet.

65. *What Generals fell at the siege of Quebec?*

Wolfe and Montcalm.

66. *What is said of Wolfe, when in the agonies of death?*

Having heard a voice cry, "They run!" he asked, "Who run?" and being told, "The French!" he replied, "I die happy," and immediately expired.

67. *What was the reply of Montcalm, when informed that his wound was mortal?*

"So much the better," he replied; "I shall not then live to witness the surrender of Quebec."

NOTE.—The remains of Wolfe were taken to London, and buried in Westminster Abbey. Those of Montcalm rest in Quebec. An elegant marble obelisk has been erected in that city to the joint memories of the two generals, who thus fell, battling for their country's glory.

68. *How long did the French and Indian war continue?*

About eight years.

69. *In what year was a general peace concluded?*

In 1763, by a treaty of peace signed at Paris.

English Possessions in America.

70. *To what amount had the National Debt of Great Britain reached?*

To the enormous amount of \$800,000,000.

71. *By the treaty, what possessions in America did Great Britain gain?*

France ceded to Great Britain all her Colonial possessions eastward of the Mississippi and north of the latitude of Iberville river.

72. *What territory did Spain, about the same time, cede to Great Britain?*

East and West Florida.

73. *Of what portion of the North American Continent did Great Britain now have possession?*

Of the whole Continent, from the shores of the Gulf of Mexico to the Frozen North, and from ocean to ocean.

CHAPTER VI.

CAUSES OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION—EARLY PROVOCATIONS, WRITS OF ASSISTANCE, TAXATION, STAMP ACT, INDIGNATION OF THE COLONIES, SECOND COLONIAL CONGRESS, SONS OF LIBERTY, REPEAL OF STAMP ACT, TAX ON GLASS, PAPER, ETC., QUARTERING OF TROOPS, NON-IMPORTATION, TEA TAX, RECEPTION OF TEA IN BOSTON AND OTHER CITIES, BOSTON PORT BILL, ETC.

Causes of the Revolution.

1. *What duties had the British Parliament imposed in 1755?*

Duties on sugar and molasses imported into the Colonies; but the payment of them was for many years evaded or openly violated, with but little interference by the British authorities.

2. *How did the British Government attempt to enforce this Act?*

In January, 1761, an attempt was made to enforce the act by Writs of Assistance to be obtained from the Colonial Courts.

Writs of Assistance. 1761.

3. *What were Writs of Assistance?*

They were general search-warrants, which not only allowed the King's officers who held them to break open any citizen's store or dwelling, to search for and seize foreign merchandise on which a duty had not been paid, but compelled sheriffs and others to assist in the work.

4. *In which of the Colonies were these writs first issued?*

In Massachusetts, where they were violently opposed.

5. *Who boldly resisted them?*

James Otis, in the Town-hall of Boston.

6. *Repeat his emphatic language on the occasion*

“To my dying day, I will oppose, with all the power and faculties God has given me, all such instruments of slavery on the one hand and villainy on the other.”

NOTE.—James Otis, born at Barnstable, Mass., 1725, a great leader of the Revolutionary party in that State; he was killed by a flash of lightning, while standing at the door of his residence, Andover, May 22, 1772.

7. *What was done by the Admiralty in 1763?*

The Admiralty undertook to enforce the strict letter of the law; vessels engaged in the contraband commerce were seized and confiscated; and the Colonial trade with the West Indies was nearly annihilated.

8. *What was done in 1764?*

The Sugar Act was re-enacted.

9. *What resolution did Mr. George Grenville now introduce?*

“That it would be proper to charge certain Stamp duties on the Colonies.”

10. *How did the Colonies receive this intelligence?*

With a general feeling of indignation.

11. *What did they do in consequence?*

They held numerous political meetings; addressed remonstrances to the King and the two Houses of Parliament; and sent agents to London, to exert all their influence in preventing, if possible, the intended Act from becoming a law.

Right of Taxation.

12. *What did England assert?*

Her undoubted right to tax the Colonies.

13. *What did the colonists maintain?*

They maintained, as a fundamental principle, that Taxation and Representation are inseparable.

14. *What did they proclaim?*

“That they were neither actually, nor virtually represented in the British Parliament; and that, if their property might be

taken from them without their consent, there would be no limit to the oppressions, which might be exercised over them."

15. *Who was at this time the chief Minister and Adviser of the King?*

Lord Bute, a Scotch adventurer, who had been tutor to the King.

16. *What placards did the people put up in London during his administration?*

Supposing the King to be under the direction of his mother, and she under that of Lord Bute, they stuck up placards everywhere: "NO SCOTCH MINISTER! NO PETTICOAT GOVERNMENT!"

The Stamp Act, 1765.

17. *Who succeeded Lord Bute as Prime Minister?*

George Grenville, who, in 1765, proposed the celebrated Stamp Act.

18. *What amount of money did he propose to raise from the Colonies by this tax?*

One million of dollars.

19. *Was the idea of a Stamp Act original with Mr. Grenville?*

No; it had been suggested as early as 1739 by a club of American merchants, at the head of whom, were Sir William Keith, Governor of Pennsylvania, Josiah Gee, and others.

20. *At this crisis, who was appointed Agent for Pennsylvania?*
Benjamin Franklin.

21. *On his arrival in London, by whom was he consulted?*

By Mr. Grenville, Mr. Pitt, and other distinguished Members of Parliament.

22. *How did he advise them in reference to the Stamp Act?*

That it was an unwise measure; that the Americans would never submit to be taxed without their consent, and that such an Act, if attempted to be enforced, would endanger the unity of the Empire.

23. *On what day did the Ministers first submit the Stamp Act to the House of Commons?*

On the 7th of February, 1765.

24. *Did it meet with much opposition?*

Yes; it met with the most strenuous opposition, both in and out of Parliament. In opposing the tax, the celebrated Earl of Chatham exclaimed: "I know the valor of your troops, the skill of your officers; but in such a cause your success will be hazardous. America, if she fall, will fall like the strong man; she will embrace the pillars of the State, and pull down the Constitution with her."

25. *At what time did the Stamp Act become a law?*

On the 22d of March, 1765.

26. *On the night of its passage, what did Dr. Franklin write to his friend Charles Thompson?*

That "the sun of Liberty is set, and that the Americans must light the lamp of Industry and Economy."

27. *What was Thompson's reply to Franklin?*

"Be assured, we shall light torches of another sort."

Indignation of the Colonies.

28. *How was the intelligence of the passage of the Stamp Act received in America?*

It set the whole country in a blaze of resentment; and in every Colony, from Massachusetts to Georgia, there was a spontaneous expression of determined resistance.

29. *What was done in Boston and Philadelphia?*

The bells were muffled, and rung a funeral peal.

30. *What in New York?*

The Act was carried through the streets, with a death's head affixed to it, and styled "the folly of England and the ruin of America."

31. *What was done in South Carolina?*

Officers were not permitted to use the stamps; and Lord Bute, the supposed author of the Act, was hung up in the shape of an old *Boot*, which was afterward publicly burnt.

32. *What was done in other places in America?*

The stamps themselves were seized and destroyed; the houses of those who sided with the Government were plundered; the stamp officers were compelled to resign; and the doctrine was openly avowed, "that ENGLAND HAS NO RIGHT TO TAX AMERICA."

33. *What was done in the Assembly of Virginia?*

Patrick Henry introduced a series of resolutions, asserting the rights and privileges of the Colonies; declaring their exclusive right to tax themselves; denying that they were bound to yield obedience to any law for taxation, which law their Assembly did not ordain; and proclaiming that any person who, by writing or speaking, should maintain the contrary, should be deemed an enemy to the Colonies.

34. *Repeat what Henry said while supporting these Resolutions.*

Alluding to the fate of other tyrants, he exclaimed: "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third,"——(here pausing awhile until the cry of treason ended, he added)——"may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it."

35. *What was done in Massachusetts?*

On the proposal of James Otis, the Massachusetts House of Assembly passed a vote, inviting her sister Colonies to send delegates to a Congress, to be holden at New York.

36. *In acting upon this proposition, what has been said of Massachusetts and South Carolina?*

"Massachusetts sounded the trumpet, but to South Carolina is it owing, that it was attended to. Had it not been for South Carolina, no Congress would then have happened."

37. *Repeat the language of Mr. Bancroft on this subject.*

"Be it remembered, that the blessing of Union is due to the warm-heartedness of South Carolina. She was all alive, and felt at every pore; and when we count up those who, above all others, contributed to the great result, we are to name the inspired madman, James Otis, and the great statesman, the magnanimous, unwavering, faultless lover of his country, Christopher Gadsden."

Second Colonial Congress, October 7, 1765

38. *When and where did the Congress proposed by Massachusetts meet?*

At New York, on the 7th of October, 1765.

39. *Were all the Thirteen Colonies represented?*

No; the meeting of the Colonial Congress being earlier than that of several of the Colonial Assemblies, a few were denied the privilege of appointing delegates.

40. *How many Colonies were represented?*

Nine, viz.: Massachusetts, New York, New Jersey, Rhode Island, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Connecticut, Maryland, and South Carolina.

41. *What Colonies were prevented by their Governors from sending delegates to this Congress?*

Virginia, North Carolina, and New Hampshire.

42. *What did the Assemblies of these Colonies determine?*

They wrote to the Colonial Congress, that they would agree to whatever was done by that body.

43. *Who was appointed President of this Congress?*

Timothy Ruggles, of Massachusetts.

44. *How long did the Congress remain in session, and upon what did they agree?*

They remained in session *fourteen* consecutive days; and adopted a declaration of rights, drawn up by John Cruger; a

petition to the King by Robert R. Livingston; a memorial to the House of Lords by John Rutledge; and a petition to the House of Commons by James Otis.

45. *What was the leading idea in each of these documents?*

The right of the Colonies to be exempted from all taxes, not imposed by their own representatives.

46. *Did all the delegates affix their signatures of approval to these proceedings?*

All except Mr. Ruggles, the President, and Mr. Ogden of New Jersey.

47. *What was the subsequent conduct of these two individuals?*

They became disaffected to the cause, and afterward opposed it openly.

48. *How were they accordingly treated in their respective Colonies?*

Ruggles received a vote of censure from the Massachusetts House of Representatives, and was reprimanded by the Speaker; while Ogden, who was Speaker of the Assembly of New Jersey, was disgraced by being dismissed from that Chair.

49. *What subsequently took place in the Assemblies of the respective Colonies?*

They all approved the measures adopted by the Colonial Congress.

50. *What was the effect of the Stamp Act?*

By the terms of this Act, no legal business could be transacted without the use of stamped paper. All business was accordingly suspended; the Courts were closed, marriages ceased, vessels were delayed in the harbors, and all social and mercantile affairs at once stagnated.

51. *Was business resumed after a while?*

Yes; it was carried on with unstamped paper, and went on as before without any regard to the Act of Parliament.

The Sons of Liberty.

52. *Who were the Sons of Liberty?*

They were patriotic associations, which, under the title of "The Sons of Liberty," were formed throughout the different Colonies. Their object was to unite in concerted action against the oppressions of the British Government.

53. *Upon what action did these Associations resolve?*

Their members resolved to defend the liberty of the press, at all hazard

54. *What did they pledge?*

They pledged their lives and property for the defense of those who, in the exercise of their rights as freemen, should become the objects of British tyranny.

55. *What did individuals and families do?*

Individuals and families denied themselves the use of all foreign luxuries; and the trade with Great Britain was almost entirely suspended.

56. *What is said of the Merchants?*

The merchants of many places entered into engagements with each other, to import no more goods from Great Britain until the Stamp Act should be repealed.

57. *How were the accounts of these proceedings received in England?*

They were received by the Government with resentment and alarm.

58. *Who was, at this time, the First Lord of the Treasury?*

In the place of Lord Grenville, the Marquis of Rockingham, a friend of America, had been appointed first Lord of the Treasury.

59. *What was obvious to him?*

That the odious STAMP ACT must be repealed, or that the Americans must, by force of arms, be reduced to submission.

A resolution to repeal it was accordingly introduced into Parliament, and a long and angry debate followed.

60. *Who opposed the resolution for repeal, and who advocated it?*

Lord Grenville and his adherents opposed the repeal; and Mr. Pitt advocated it in the House of Commons, while Lord Camden did the same in the House of Peers.

61. *What did Mr. Pitt declare*

He boldly justified the Colonists in opposing the Stamp Act, and declared: "You have no right to tax America. I rejoice that America has resisted. Three millions of our fellow-subjects so lost to every sense of virtue, as to tamely give up their liberties, would be fit instruments to make slaves of the rest." He concluded by expressing his deliberate judgment, that the Stamp Act ought to be repealed, "absolutely, totally, and immediately."

62. *Repeat the words of Lord Camden in the House of Peers?*

"My position is this," said he, "and I will maintain it to my last hour: Taxation and representation are inseparable. Whatever is a man's own, is absolutely his own; no man has a right to take it from him, without his own consent. Whoever attempts to do it, attempts an injury; whoever does it, commits a robbery."

Repeal of the Stamp Act, March 18, 1766.

63. *When was the obnoxious Act finally repealed?*

On the 18th of March, 1766.

64. *What feeling was manifested in England on the occasion?*

The London warehouses were illuminated, and flags decorated the shipping on the Thames.

65. *How was the news received in America?*

The joy of the people was evinced by public thanksgivings, bonfires, and illuminations.

66. *How was Pitt regarded by them?*

As a political Messiah, that had saved the country.

67. *In what cities in America were statues erected to Pitt.*

In the city of New York and of Charleston.

68. *What inscription did the South Carolina House of Assembly order to be placed on the statue erected in Charleston?*

"That time shall sooner destroy all marks of their esteem, than erase from their minds a just sense of his patriotic virtues."

Anecdote.—This statue was erected in Charleston, May, 1770, at the intersection of Broad and Meeting streets. During the siege of this city, in 1780, a cannon ball discharged from a British fort on James Island, after ranging across Ashley River, and along Meeting street, struck off the right arm of the statue. In 1794, carriages for the conveyance of persons and goods had increased so much, as to require its removal from so public a thoroughfare. About the same time the principles of the French Revolution were in the ascendant, and the persons who were ordered to remove the statue, being friends of France, and opposed to the younger Pitt, who was now directing all his energies against France, did not omit to show their hostility to the son, by extending it to the statue of his illustrious father. They accordingly so managed, that in removing it, the head was severed from the body—and thus guillotined. Years after, the parts were united, and the statue was erected in front of the noble building of the Orphans' establishment, in Charleston—thus evincing that, although the blindness of party feeling had temporarily committed an outrage, yet, a "just sense of Mr. Pitt's patriotic virtues" has not been erased from the minds of Carolinians.

Right to Tax the Colonies

69. *What declaration was appended to the Repeal of the Stamp Act?*

The declaration that Parliament possessed the power to bind the Colonies in all cases whatsoever.

70. *What honest patriot foresaw that "the egg of tyranny lay concealed in this declaratory act"?*

Christopher Gadsden of South Carolina. While his fellow-citizens were rejoicing at the repeal of the Stamp Act, he received the news with declared indignation.

71. *What did he do in consequence?*

He assembled a party of friends beneath a wide-spreading

live oak near his residence in Charleston, and there harangued them on the folly of relaxing their opposition and vigilance. He warned them not to indulge the fallacious hope that Great Britain would relinquish her designs or pretensions; and pressed them to prepare their minds for the most trying events. This address was received with silent and profound attention.

72. *What was done by the party thus assembled?*

The patriot band, with linked hands, unanimously pledged themselves to resist—a pledge which they nobly redeemed when the hour of trial arrived.

73. *In consequence of this meeting under its branches, what was the tree called?*

It was called the “Liberty Tree.”

74. *What became of it afterward?*

The tree continued to be a favorite meeting-place, until the Revolution was in full progress. Under its branches the DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE was first read to the assembled people of Charleston. When Sir Henry Clinton took possession of the city in 1780, he ordered it to be cut down, and a fire lighted over the stump by piling its branches around.

NOTE.—*Liberty trees* were consecrated in almost every principal town of the Colonies.

Tax on Glass, Paper, etc., 1767.

75. *In 1767, what other plan of taxation was introduced into Parliament?*

A tax, imposing duties on glass, paper, paste-board, painter's colors, etc.

76. *Who introduced this Bill?*

Mr. Townshend, Chancellor of the Exchequer, during the absence of Mr. Pitt.

77. *Did the Bill pass?*

It passed with little opposition, and was approved by the King.

Quartering of Troops.

78. *What other Bill was passed affecting the Colonies?*

One establishing a Board of Trade in the Colonies, independent of Colonial legislation; and another suspending the legislative power of the Assembly of New York, until it should furnish the King's troops with certain supplies at the expense of the Colonies.

79. *What excitement did the passage of these Bills produce in America?*

An excitement not less intense than that occasioned by the passage of the Stamp Act, two years before.

80. *What did the Colonial Assemblies do?*

They promptly passed spirited resolutions against the odious enactments.

Non-Importation Associations, 1770.

81. *What Associations were formed?*

Associations in support of domestic manufactures, and against the use and importation of British fabrics.

82. *What began now to be boldly denied?*

The legislative authority of Parliament over the Colonies.

83. *What did the Assembly of Massachusetts do?*

The Assembly sent a circular to the other Colonies, entreating their co-operation in obtaining a redress of grievances

84. *What effect had the circular of Massachusetts upon the British Ministry?*

The British Ministry issued circulars to the Colonial Assemblies, warning them not to imitate the factious disobedience of Massachusetts; and the Royal Governors were ordered to enforce obedience by all means in their power.

85. *What effect had these circulars of the Ministry upon the Colonial Assemblies?*

It only excited their disgust, and irritated them the more;

and a second Association for suspending importations of British manufactures was formed.

86. *Who was, at this time, Prime Minister of England?*
Lord North.

87. *In what year was the Act passed for the repeal of the duties on all the taxed articles except tea?*

In the year 1770; and, in consequence of this partial repeal, the mercantile intercourse between the Colonies and the mother country was partially renewed.

Battle of Alamance, May 16, 1771.

88. *What happened in North Carolina in 1771?*

Governor Tryon had caused a palace to be erected for his residence at Newbern. This cost seventy-five thousand dollars, which sum was raised by a tax upon the Province. The people resisted this and other unjust taxes. They formed Associations, and, calling themselves Regulators, determined to take matters into their own hands.

89. *What did Governor Tryon do?*

Deeming the conduct of the Regulators to be open rebellion, he marched against them with an armed force, determined to subdue them.

90. *When and where did they meet him?*

They met him, May 16th, 1771, at Alamance Creek, in Alamance County, N. C.

91. *What ensued?*

A bloody skirmish ensued. The Regulators were overcome and dispersed; three hundred of their number were killed, and, after hanging six of the leaders, Tryon marched back in triumph to the seaboard. This has been claimed as the first real battle of the Revolution.

The Tea Tax, March 10, 1773.

92. *What did the British Ministry attempt in 1773?*

They passed a bill through Parliament, by which the East India Company was allowed to export tea to America, free from the duties before paid in England.

93. *What duty were the Colonies to pay?*

An import duty of only *three pence* per pound on such tea as the Colonies imported.

94. *Were the colonists willing to receive the tea on these apparently favorable terms?*

No; they adopted such measures, with regard to the expected tea vessels, as were the most likely to prevent the landing of their cargoes.

Reception of the Tea.

95. *How did the people of Boston prevent the tea from being landed?*

A party, disguised as Indians, boarded the tea ships, and threw their cargoes into the sea.

96. *How was the tea received in Charleston, S. C.?*

It was stored away in damp cellars, and not a pound of it sold to any of the citizens.

Boston Port Bill, March 31, 1774.

7. *What punishment did the British Parliament inflict on the merchants of Boston?*

They passed an Act closing its port, and removing its custom-house officers and trade to Salem.

98. *What injurious alteration was made in the government of Massachusetts?*

Its charter was new modeled: so that the nomination to all important offices was vested in the British Crown.

99. *What change was made with regard to persons indicted for certain crimes?*

In 1773, it was enacted, that any person indicted for murder, or for any capital offense, committed in aiding the magistrates, might be sent to another Colony, or to Great Britain, for trial.

100. *On what day was the Boston Port Bill to go into operation?*

On the 1st June, 1774.

101. *What was the effect of this measure upon the Bostonians?*

It totally crushed their business, and great suffering ensued.

Sympathy of the Colonies.

102. *What sympathy was manifested in their behalf?*

Everywhere great sympathy was manifested. Flour, rice, grain, and money, were sent to them from the other Colonies; and one hundred and fifty thousand dollars were subscribed by their friends in London.

103. *How did the Legislature of Virginia resolve to keep the day?*

As one of fasting, humiliation, and prayer, "to implore God to give them one heart and one mind firmly to oppose, by all just and proper means, every injury to American rights."

104. *What was done in South Carolina?*

South Carolina held a Provincial Congress at Charleston, and passed resolutions, recommending all the inhabitants to practice the use of fire-arms, and to set aside a day for fasting and prayer.

105. *What other oppressive Acts were shortly afterward passed by the British Parliament, affecting the Colonies?*

In March, 1774, Parliament passed an Act, empowering sheriffs appointed by the Crown, to select juries for the trial of all cases; it prohibited all town meetings and other gatherings, and provided for the appointment of judges and other officers by the Crown, or its representative. In April, 1774, it also enacted, that all Royal officials committing capital offenses

in the Colonies should be sent to England for trial. In the same year, the Act for quartering troops in America was passed; and also another Act, making concessions to the Roman Catholics of Canada, while the same sect were disqualified in other Colonies.

106. *To enforce these laws, what was done?*

General Gage, commander of the British army in America, was appointed Governor of Massachusetts, and an additional military force was ordered to Boston.

107. *What spirited action was taken by the Whigs of Massachusetts?*

While insulting troops were parading the streets of their capital, the Representatives of the people met at Salem, and sent forth an invitation to the other Colonies to meet in a General Congress at Philadelphia, on the 5th September, 1774.

NOTE.—Whigs and Tories were titles long used in England by political parties. The former denoted the opposers of Royalty; the latter its supporters. These terms were introduced into America two or three years before the Revolution broke out. The patriots were called *Whigs*, and the loyalists *Tories*.

108. *At their meeting in Salem, what did the patriots do?*

They provided for the munitions of war, and formed a Non-Importation League for the whole country. During their session, General Gage sent his Secretary to dissolve them; but the doors were locked against him, the key was kept in Samuel Adams's pocket, and no one was permitted to enter or retire until the Assembly had finished its business.

109. *How were the proceedings of Massachusetts received by the other Colonies?*

With a hearty response from twelve of the other Colonies. The press all over the country seconded the measures of the patriots; and several of them bore the significant device, at their head, of a snake cut into thirteen parts, each part bearing the initials of a Colony, under the words, "UNITE OR DIE!"

First Continental Congress, Sept. 5, 1774.

110. *When and where did this Congress meet?*

At Philadelphia, September 5th, 1774.

111. *Why was it called the FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS?*

To distinguish it from the two Colonial Congresses previously held; the one at Albany, in 1754; the other at New York, in 1765.

112. *How was the Congress attended, and who were its officers?*

It was attended by delegates from all the thirteen Colonies except Georgia; Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, was appointed President, and Charles Thompson, of Pennsylvania, Secretary.

113. *How long was this Congress in session, and what business did it transact?*

It commenced its regular business on the 7th of September, 1774, and remained in session about *seven weeks*. It prepared the plan of an AMERICAN ASSOCIATION, recommending commercial non-intercourse with Great Britain and her West India Colonies; abandonment of the African slave trade; improvement in the breed of sheep; abstinence from all extravagant living, and horse-racing.

114. *What able papers were put forth?*

A Bill of Rights, and an Address to the People of Great Britain, by John Jay; an Address to the Anglo-American Colonies, by William Livingston; and also Addresses to the Inhabitants of Quebec and to the King, by John Dickinson.

115. *What did Lord Chatham declare in the House of Lords concerning the proceedings of this Congress?*

That, "for solidity of reasoning, force of sagacity, and wisdom of conclusion, no body of men stood in preference to the General Congress at Philadelphia."

116. *To what time did the Congress adjourn?*

It adjourned to meet again at Philadelphia, on the 10th May,

1775, unless a redress of grievances should render such meeting unnecessary.

117. *Was a reconciliation with the mother country looked for?*

By a large majority of the delegates of that Congress, sincere hopes for reconciliation were entertained; they were, however, entirely disappointed.

CHAPTER VII.

THE REVOLUTION—THE COLONIES ARM FOR DEFENSE, THE KING'S SPEECH, TRADE RESTRICTED, LEXINGTON AND CONCORD, POPULAR EXCITEMENT, GEORGIA, MECKLENBURGH, ETC., SECOND CONTINENTAL CONGRESS, BUNKER HILL, EXPEDITION AGAINST CANADA, ACTION OF PARLIAMENT, BATTLE OF FORT SULLIVAN, ETC.

The Colonies arm for Defense.

1. *On the very day, October 26, 1774, that the Continental Congress adjourned, what did the Congress of Massachusetts do?*

They met at Concord, and resolved to raise an army of twenty thousand men; one-fourth to stand ready at a minute's warning to take up arms. Rhode Island, New Hampshire, and Connecticut were solicited to furnish their quota; and the whole were to be placed under the direction of a Committee of Safety, with John Hancock as chairman.

2. *What had provoked this movement?*

The conduct of General Gage, two months before. He had begun to fortify Boston; and had seized the magazines of gun-

powder and other military stores at Cambridge and Charlestown.

3. *What had Christopher Gadsden proposed in the Continental Congress, on these proceedings of General Gage?*

That "he should be immediately attacked at his headquarters in Boston."

The King's Speech, November, 1774.

4. *What was now done by the British Parliament?*

November 20th, 1774, the British Parliament convened. The King, in his speech, stated that a most daring resistance to the laws prevailed in Massachusetts, which was encouraged by the other Colonies; that he was determined to withstand any attempt to weaken the Royal authority, and asked the concurrence of Parliament.

5. *What did Lord Chatham declare upon this occasion?*

"The way," said he, "must be immediately opened for reconciliation. It will soon be too late. The colonists say you have no right to tax them without their consent. They say truly. Representation and taxation must go together—they are inseparable. This wise people speak out. They do not hold the language of slaves. They do not ask you to repeal your laws as a favor; they claim it as a right. They tell you they will not submit to them; and I tell you, the acts must be repealed, and you must go through the work; you must declare you have no right to tax—then they may trust you."

6. *Were the addresses and petitions of the colonists listened to in Parliament?*

They were not; on the ground that they emanated from illegal assemblies.

7. *What did Parliament do?*

Both Houses of Parliament concurred in an address to the King, in which they declared that "the Americans only wished to become independent; and only waited for ability and oppor

tunity to accomplish their design. To prevent this, and to crush the monster in its birth, became the duty of every Englishman."

The Trade of the Colonies restricted.

8. What enactment did Parliament now make?

February 10th, 1775, it passed an Act, by which the Colonies of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New Hampshire, and Rhode Island were restricted in their trade to Great Britain and the West India possessions; and were also prohibited from fishing on the Banks of Newfoundland. The same restrictions were soon after extended to all the Colonies, except New York, North Carolina, and Georgia. By exempting these, it was hoped to weaken the action of the Colonies by separating them.

9. In preparation for coming events, what had the Legislature of Massachusetts done?

It had ordered military stores to be collected, and the militia and minute men to keep themselves practiced in arms.

10. To counteract this, what did General Gage do?

He ordered three hundred soldiers, under command of Colonel Leslie, to embark clandestinely, and seize whatever military stores and ammunition they should find at Salem. Not finding them, Leslie marched to Danvers; but, at the river, he found the bridge drawn up. His march was delayed, the stores were removed by the Patriots, and Leslie was forced to retrace his steps.

Lexington and Concord, April 18th, 1775.

11. What happened at Concord?

A quantity of ammunition and stores were also deposited at Concord. General Gage sent eight hundred men, under command of Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn, to seize or destroy them. At Lexington, April 19th, 1775, they were met by the

militia, drawn up in line. The order was given them to disperse; but not obeying it, Major Pitcairn, advancing, discharged his pistol, and ordered his men to fire. They did so; seven men were killed and nine wounded, when the militia dispersed, leaving a part of the stores in possession of a British detachment.

12. *What was next done?*

A British detachment proceeded to Concord, and took possession of a part of the stores; but were now attacked on their return, and, although reinforced by Lord Percy with nine hundred men, they were continually harassed by a destructive fire from the Americans, concealed behind stone walls, hedges, and trees along the way.

13. *What loss did the British sustain on their return?*

On the night of the 19th of April, the British troops, greatly harassed and with a loss of two hundred and seventy-three men, reached Bunker Hill, where they rested that night. The next morning, under protection of a man-of-war, they entered Boston; the American loss being only eighty-five men.

Popular Excitement.

14. *What was now the state of the public mind?*

The greatest excitement was produced. Couriers spread the news far and near: "War was begun! the cry, To arms! and the watchword, Liberty or Death!"

15. *How was the cry responded to?*

The Legislatures of most of the Colonies convened; officers were appointed, troops raised; fathers left their children, and mothers sent their sons to the field, and in a few weeks an army of twenty thousand patriots was collected around the neighborhood of Boston.

16. *What was the feeling in South Carolina?*

As early as February, 1775, the people of Charleston gave evidence of their determination to support the Association. A

ship-load of three hundred slaves arrived, and were sent out of the Colony; even household furniture and horses could not be landed, and the whole cargo of the "Charming Sally" was thrown into Hog Island Channel.

17. *How did South Carolina further evince her open rebellion a few months later?*

Under authority of her Provincial Congress, a secret Committee, on the 21st of April, 1775, seized all the gunpowder and small-arms in the State House Armory and other magazines about Charleston, and took the same into their possession.

18. *When the Royal Governor brought "this very extraordinary and alarming state of things" to the notice of the Assembly, what jocose, though respectful reply did they make?*

That "their body, with all the inquiry they could make, were not able to obtain any certain intelligence on the subject; but think there is reason to suppose, that some of the inhabitants of the Colony had been induced to take so extraordinary a step, in consequence of the late alarming accounts from Great Britain."

19. *How long was it before the news of the battle of Lexington reached Charleston?*

Not before May the 8th, 1775, about twenty-one days after the patriots of Charleston had seized the King's magazine in that city.

Georgia, Mecklenburgh, &c., 1775.

20. *What effect had the news of the battle of Lexington on the people of Georgia?*

On the 10th of May, the news of the battle reached Savannah; on the night of the 11th, a few of her patriotic citizens broke open the King's magazine in that city, and took therefrom over five hundred pounds of powder.

21. *What was done at Mecklenburgh, N. C.?*

At a convention of the people of that town and its neighbor-

hood, held May 15th, 1775, a resolution was passed, declaring their "Independence of the authority of the King and Parliament, and the former civil Constitution of the Colonies." This was thirteen months previous to the Declaration of July 4th, 1776.

22. *What attack was made on Ticonderoga and Crown Point, May 10th, 1775?*

A band of Volunteers from Connecticut and the "Green Mountain Boys," headed by Ethan Allen, Seth Warner, and Benedict Arnold, surprised the garrisons at Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and descending against various places on Lake Champlain, secured large booty for the Revolutionary party.

Second Continental Congress, May 10th, 1775.

23. *When and where did the Second Continental Congress meet?*

On the 10th of May, 1775, at Philadelphia.

24. *What important measures were acted upon?*

The Congress resolved upon armed resistance; voted to raise an army of twenty thousand men; and, on the 17th of April, elected George Washington "Commander-in-Chief of all the forces raised, or to be raised, for the defense of the Colonies." They adopted the undisciplined troops at Boston as a CONTINENTAL ARMY; and appointed, as Major-Generals, Artemas Ward, Charles Lee, Philip Schuyler, and Israel Putnam; as Adjutant-General, Horatio Gates; and as Brigadier-Generals, Seth Pomeroy, Richard Montgomery, David Wooster, William Heath, Joseph Spencer, John Thomas, John Sullivan, and Nathaniel Green.

25. *What power and authority did Congress confer upon Washington?*

"Full power and authority to act as he should think for the good and welfare of the service."

NOTE I.—*The appointment of General Washington* was effected principally through the good management of John Adams. In Congress, three parties existed. One, for further petitioning Parliament; another, for immediate independence; and a third, jealous of New England, and opposed to a Northern army with a Northern Commander at its head. Besides this, there were several persons ambitious of the distinction of being placed at the head of the army,—among them, General Ward, then Commander of the New England troops; and Mr. Hancock, President of Congress. Mr. Adams thus records the history of the appointment:

“When Congress had assembled, I rose in my place; and, in as short a speech as the subject would admit, represented the state of the Colonies, the uncertainty in the minds of the people, their great expectation and anxiety, the distresses of the army, the danger of its dissolution, the difficulty of collecting another, and the probability that the British army would take advantage of our delays, march out of Boston, and spread desolation as far as they could go. I concluded with a motion in form, that Congress would adopt the army at Cambridge, and appoint a General: that though this was not the proper time to nominate a General, yet, as I had reason to believe this was a point of the greatest difficulty, I had no hesitation to declare, that I had but one gentleman in my mind for that important command; and that was a gentleman from Virginia, who was among us, and very well known to all of us; a gentleman, whose skill and experience as an officer, whose independent fortune, great talents, and excellent universal character would command the approbation of all America, and unite the cordial exertions of all the Colonies better than any other person in the Union. Mr. Washington, who happened to sit near the door, as soon as he heard me allude to him, from his usual modesty, darted into the library room. Mr. Hancock, who was our President, which gave me an opportunity to observe his countenance, while I was speaking on the state of the Colonies, the army at Cambridge and the enemy, heard me with visible pleasure; but when I came to describe Washington for the commander, I never remarked a more sudden and striking change of countenance; mortification and resentment were expressed as forcibly as his face could exhibit them. Mr. Samuel Adams seconded the motion; and that did not soften the President’s physiognomy at all. The subject was postponed to a future day. In the mean time, pains were taken out of doors to obtain a unanimity; and the voices were generally so clearly in favor of Washington, that the dissentient members were persuaded to withdraw their opposition, and Mr. Washington was nominated, I believe, by Mr. Thomas Johnson of Maryland, unanimously elected, and the army adopted.”

NOTE II.—Not only was the army entirely undisciplined, but also very poorly provided. A Poet of the day describes their accoutrements:—

“’Twas curious their guns to see;
Some six feet long, and others three.
Some with sword, and some with gun,
Some with *bagnets*, and some with none.”

Bunker Hill, June 17th, 1775.

26. *How had the British army before Boston been increased?*

By a large reinforcement, under the commands of Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne.

27. *To prevent the British forces from penetrating into the country beyond Boston, what did the Americans do?*

They fortified Boston Neck, while a detachment of one thousand men, under Colonel Prescott, was sent to throw up an in-

trenchment on Bunker Hill, which commanded Charlestown Neck.

28. *What mistake occurred?*

By some mistake, Breed Hill was fortified nearer Boston, and within reach of the British cannon in the harbor.

29. *How was this position maintained?*

On the morning of the 17th of June, 1775, a body of three thousand British, commanded by General Howe, was sent to dislodge the Americans. Twice they marched up to within a few rods of the redoubt of the Americans, and were twice driven back with dreadful loss. Fresh troops arriving under General Clinton, the British made a third attack; when the Americans, without ammunition and without bayonets, retreated slowly and without confusion to Charlestown Neck.

30. *What was the loss of the respective armies?*

The British lost one thousand in killed and wounded—the Americans but four hundred and fifty; among them the lamented General Warren.

Expedition against Canada, September, 1775.

31. *What expedition was sent against Canada in September, 1775?*

An expedition under Generals Schuyler and Montgomery.

32. *With what result?*

They proceeded against St. John's, which surrendered to Montgomery, November 3d, 1775; Schuyler being detained by sickness at Ticonderoga. Montgomery next marched rapidly to Montreal, which surrendered November 13th, 1775, and thence pushed on to Quebec.

33. *What American officer did he meet there?*

He there met Arnold with a detachment, which had ascended the Kennebeck; and which, crossing the mountains, after incredible hardships, had reached Quebec, where he awaited the arrival of Montgomery.

34. *What was next done?*

For three weeks Quebec was unsuccessfully besieged. On the 31st December, 1775, in the midst of a dreadful snow storm, four columns of Americans attempted to carry the city by assault. They had already passed the first barrier, when Montgomery was killed, and borne from the field by Colonel Burr; Arnold having his leg shattered by a musket ball, was also borne from the field. Their officers falling around them on every side, the Americans became disheartened and fell back.

NOTE.—Richard Montgomery was born in Ireland, in 1737. He was with Wolfe at Quebec; on his return to England, he resigned his commission, and on the breaking out of the American Revolution took sides with the Americans. He was appointed to the command of the Continental Army in the Northern Department. He reduced Fort Chamblee and took Montreal, and on the 31st December, 1775, fell in an attack upon Quebec. A monument is erected to his memory in front of St. Paul's Church, in the city of New York.

35. *How did the battle close?*

Morgan, at the head of his riflemen, renewed the assault, and took two batteries; but being overpowered by numbers, his whole corps became prisoners of war. The other columns retreated, and encamped above Quebec, under command of Arnold. Before the middle of 1776, the Americans had entirely abandoned Canada.

36. *What was now the feeling of the thirteen American Colonies toward Great Britain?*

They were all in open rebellion, and had all sent delegates to the Continental Congress, authorized to "make every sacrifice rather than suffer a loss of their liberties."

Parliament determines to subdue the Colonies.

37. *Upon what measures did Parliament now determine?*

The petition of Congress to the King was rejected. An Act of confiscation was passed against the trade, the merchandise, and the shipping of the Colonies; and whatever crews might be captured, were to be impressed into the British Navy. The

British army in America was augmented to forty thousand—a large portion of which were hiring German troops.

38. *How did the military ability and intellectual greatness of Washington show themselves, amid these complicated difficulties?*

Never greater! "His voice was heard in all directions on the march to Canada, in the ports in New York, on board the national cruisers, at the meeting of committees and assemblies, in the Provincial Legislatures, within Congress itself—everywhere pointing out what *was to be* done, and the *spirit* in which it was to be done. His activity, judgment, executive power, and above all his moral power, were never more conspicuous than in those rude lines before Boston."

39. *Who now held possession of Boston?*

The British under Sir William Howe.

40. *What measures were taken to dispossess him of the place?*

Batteries were erected on several neighboring hills, from which shots and bombs were thrown into the town. The one erected on Dorchester Heights proving successful, Howe was obliged to abandon the town; and on the 17th March, 1776, he sailed for Halifax, accompanied by fifteen hundred families of Loyalists, or Tories.

41. *After Howe's departure, to what place did Washington march his forces?*

To New York, with the purpose of defending that city against an anticipated attack of Clinton.

42. *Did Clinton attack New York?*

No! hearing of Washington's movement, he changed his course, and sailed against Charleston, South Carolina.

43. *By what British admiral was he accompanied?*

By Admiral Sir Peter Parker, who came directly from England with two thousand five hundred veteran troops. Of these, Clin-

ton took command. On the 4th of June, the British fleet had reached Charleston.

44. *How did the Carolinians prepare for this event?*

They had collected about six thousand men in the city, and made every sacrifice to give the enemy a brave resistance. Defenses were thrown up at several commanding points around the harbor; and at the western point of Sullivan's Island, six miles from the city, a Palmetto Fort was hastily erected, and fortified with twenty-six cannon and five hundred men, under the command of Colonel Moultrie. At the opposite point of the Island, Colonel Thompson guarded the pass from Long Island, then held by Clinton with the British land forces, amounting to over two thousand men.

NOTE.—*William Moultrie*, born of Scotch ancestry; served as a Captain in the Cherokee war, 1761; member of Congress, 1775; Commanding Colonel at the defense of Fort Sullivan, 1776; appointed Brigadier-General, 1776; gained a battle over the British, near Beaufort, 1779; was second in command when Charleston was besieged in 1780, and at the capture of that city sent to Philadelphia a prisoner of war; returned to South Carolina in 1782; was twice Governor of that State; and died at Charleston, September 27, 1805, aged 75 years; published *Memoirs of the Revolution* in 1802.

45. *Who commanded the American forces?*

General Charles Lee had been sent from the North for this purpose.

NOTE.—*Charles Lee*, born in Wales, 1731, came to America in 1756, and distinguished himself in the French and Indian war; served under Burgoyne, in Portugal, 1762; from 1770, for three years, rambled over all Europe; served as aid to Poniatowski, King of Poland; after serving that Monarch several years, came to America in 1773; a British officer, for some time, but accepted a commission in the Continental Army, in 1775; accompanied Washington to Cambridge, and was in active service until December, 1776, when he was captured; obtained his release in 1778, and was at the battle of Monmouth the same year; for disobedience of conduct at that battle, was suspended by Congress from his command, in 1780; left the army, and died at Philadelphia, October, 1782, aged 51. His last words on his death-bed were, "Stand by me, my brave grenadiers."

46. *What did he think of the Fort at Sullivan's Island?*

"He thought it would prove a mere slaughter-pen to its brave defenders; and only yielded to Moultrie's obstinacy in holding it, as a compliment to the proud Carolinians."

47. *When Moultrie was told that the British men-of-war would knock down the Fort in ten minutes, what was his reply?*

“Then we will lie behind the ruins, and prevent the enemy from landing.”

48. *On what day did the British commence their attack?*

On the 28th June, 1776, they commenced a heavy cannonade against the Fort.

49. *With what result?*

The Palmetto logs, of which the Fort was made, received broadside after broadside of cannon balls, and without splitting or throwing off splinters, sustained each shock with little injury. The enemy's fire was returned with dreadful havoc. At one time, the quarter-deck of Parker's flag-ship was cleared of every man but the Admiral himself, and all the British ships were severely handled.

50. *What order did General Lee issue during the engagement?*

Seeing that Moultrie was fast exhausting his small supply of powder, he advised to spike the guns and to retreat. Moultrie, however, by ceasing his fire for a while, held out until a fresh supply of powder arrived; and after a noble defense, which had lasted for nine hours, succeeded in disabling and silencing the enemy. The loss of the British was two hundred and twenty-five men in killed and wounded; that of the Americans only ten killed and twenty-two wounded.

51. *When Governor Rutledge heard, during the action, that Lee desired the Fort to be abandoned to the enemy, what did he write to Moultrie?*

“General Lee wishes you to abandon the Fort; you will not, without an order from me; I would sooner cut off my hand, than write one.”

52. *Describe the noble conduct of Sergeant Jasper during the battle?*

The crescent flag which waved over the fort was cut down by a cannon ball, early in the action, and fell upon the beach.

Jasper leaped over the parapet, recovered the flag, and again set it up, amid a shower of balls from the enemy.

53. *While the attack was making on the Fort, what did Clinton attempt?*

To cross the channel from Long Island, and attack Fort Sullivan in the rear.

54. *By whom was he prevented?*

By Colonel Thompson's Rifle Company of Sharpshooters. Every one of the enemy that attempted to pass, received his death-shot from the Carolina marksmen.

55. *How was the British defeat at Fort Sullivan regarded at home, and in England?*

Being the first naval defeat which England had sustained for years, it was regarded by her people "as a deep stain upon the glory of her flag," and "a crescent star to the hopes of America."

Anecdote.—On the day after the battle, Governor Rutledge visited Fort Moultrie, and after complimenting the garrison on their gallantry, presented Jasper with a small-sword. He also offered him a Lieutenant's commission; but the young hero modestly refused it, saying: "I am content to remain a Sergeant in the service of my country." A few days after this, Mrs. Barnard Elliot presented Moultrie's regiment with a pair of elegant colors, one of them of blue silk, the other of red silk, richly embroidered. At the siege of Savannah, these standards were planted on the walls, first by Hume and Bush, who fell mortally wounded. Lieutenant Gray, of the South Carolina regiment, next seized the standards, and kept them erect, when he, too, was prostrated by a bullet. Sergeant Jasper now sprung forward, secured the colors, and had just fastened them upon the parapet, when a rifle ball pierced him, and he fell into the ditch below. He was carried to the camp and soon afterward expired, exclaiming: "Tell Mrs. Elliot, I lost my life supporting the colors she presented to our regiment."

Jasper was born in Ireland, and like most of his countrymen, was characterized by bravery and humanity. On one occasion, a Mrs. Jones' husband was confined in irons for deserting the Royal cause after taking protection. Feeling certain that her husband would be hanged, she enlisted the assistance of Jasper in his behalf. Jones, with seven other prisoners, was on his way to Savannah, where he was to be hanged the next morning. Jasper, with only one companion, Sergeant Newton, resolved to rescue them.

Concealing themselves in the bushes, near a spring, where the guard, consisting of eight men, with the prisoners, were to pass, they awaited their approach. As expected, the guard halted to drink. Only two of them remained with the prisoners, while the others, leaving their muskets against a tree, went to the spring. Jasper and his companion then leaped from their concealment, and seizing the guns, shot the two sentinels. The guards alarmed, were powerless, and surrendered. The irons were knocked off the wrists of the prisoners; muskets were placed in their hands; and the custodians of Jones and his fellow patriots were taken to the American camp the next morning, as prisoners of war.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE—ITS HISTORY AND ANALYSIS.

Its History.

1. *What was the great event of the Continental Congress of 1776?*

The Declaration of American Independence, on the 4th of July, 1776.

2. *What had Virginia instructed her delegates to propose in the Continental Congress?*

A resolution declaring the thirteen British Colonies in America, Free and Independent States.

3. *Whom did the Virginia Delegates select, from among themselves, to present this Resolution?*

Richard Henry Lee; who, on the 7th June, 1776, presented the following Resolution:

“That these united Colonies are, and of right ought to be, FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British Crown; and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved.”

4. *By whom was the Resolution seconded?*

By John Adams; who moved, that its consideration be postponed until the next day.

5. *What was then done?*

It was referred to a committee of the whole, and debated throughout Saturday, and the succeeding Monday. On the latter day, it was resolved, that the resolution be postponed to the first of July next. On June the 11th, it was resolved, that a committee of five be chosen by ballot, to prepare the draft of a Declaration of Independence.

6. *State the choice and order of the ballot ?*

Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia ; John Adams, of Massachusetts ; Benjamin Franklin, of Pennsylvania ; Roger Sherman, of Connecticut ; and Robert R. Livingston, of New York. Lee, on account of the illness of his wife, was obliged to return to Virginia, and was excused from serving on the Committee.

7. *Who drafted the Declaration ?*

On account of his acknowledged superiority as a writer, and in compliment to his being the Chairman, the Committee requested Mr. Jefferson to draft the Declaration ; which he did, as he tells us, "without reference to either book or pamphlet while writing it." Adams and Franklin suggested a few verbal alterations, which were accepted ; and on the 28th of June the Declaration was reported to Congress, and was read, and ordered to lie on the table.

8. *When was the consideration of Lee's original resolution taken up ?*

On the first July, the original resolution for Independence was taken up, and after a very animated debate for and against it, was passed by the vote of nine Colonies out of thirteen.

9. *What States of the Convention at first hung back ?*

New York, Pennsylvania, Delaware, and South Carolina. New York, because her delegates had received no instruction to vote on so grave a question ; the other three, Pennsylvania, Delaware, and South Carolina, for other reasons.

10. *Who were the chief speakers in the Convention, for and against the Declaration.*

Jefferson informs us, that John Adams, R. H. Lee, Mr. Wythe, and others, were its advocates, while Mr. Wilson, Robert R. Livingston, Edward Rutledge, Mr. Dickinson, and a few others opposed it as a measure not bad in itself, but as premature.

11. *What did Edward Rutledge, of South Carolina, request ?*

That the determination might be put off until the next day, as he believed his colleagues, though disapproving the resolution, would then join in for the sake of unanimity.

12. *Was this request granted?*

The ultimate question was accordingly postponed to the next day, when it was resumed, and South Carolina concurred in voting for it.

13. *What took place in the meantime?*

A third member arrived from Delaware, and turned her vote in favor of the resolution. Members of different sentiments coming from Pennsylvania, also changed her vote; and the Convention of New York, within a few days, approved it.

14. *What followed?*

On the same day, the 2d of July, the House, in Committee of the Whole, took from the table the draft of the Declaration of Independence, which had been reported by Mr. Jefferson.

15. *How long did the debate on its adoption continue?*

Three days, and several amendments were carried in Committee of the Whole.

16. *What causes led to the two most important amendments?*

The idea that we had friends in England, worth keeping terms with, led to the striking out of those passages, which conveyed censure on the people of that country; and the clause, reprobating the African slave trade, was expunged, out of complaisance to South Carolina and Georgia, which had been large purchasers of slaves, and in tenderness to New England, whose merchants were largely benefitted in carrying on the traffic.

17. *What was next done?*

The Declaration, as amended, was directed to be sent to the several Assemblies, Conventions, and Committees, or Councils of Safety, and to the several commanding-officers of the Con-

tinental troops ; and to be proclaimed in each of the United States, and at the head of the Army.

18. *Why is the 4th of July celebrated as the anniversary of the Declaration of American Independence?*

Because, on that day, votes from all the Colonies were procured in its favor.

19. *Was the Declaration signed, at first, by all the approving delegates?*

No ; only John Hancock, the president, signed on the 4th ; and with his name alone, the Declaration went forth to the world. It was afterward engrossed upon the Journals of Congress, and, on the 2d of August following, it was signed by all but one of the fifty-six Delegates, whose names are usually found appended to it. That one was Matthew Thornton, who, on taking his seat in November, asked and obtained permission to sign.

20. *What has been said of the character, ages, and professions of the signers of the Declaration of Independence?*

They were men from almost every grade and profession in life. Among them were twenty-four lawyers, fourteen farmers, nine merchants, four physicians, one minister of the Gospel, three educated for the ministry, one manufacturer. As regards their ages ; three of them exceeded ninety years, ten lived beyond eighty, eleven over seventy, fourteen over sixty, eleven over fifty, six over forty-four ; and Mr. Lynch, who was lost at sea, was only thirty. The aggregate life of the fifty-six patriots was 3,687 years. All of them lived honored and respected through life.

21. *What has Mr. Webster called the Declaration of Independence?*

THE TITLE DEED OF OUR LIBERTIES, whose history every American should treasure up, and emulate.

Analysis of the Declaration.

22. *When does the Declaration justify one people in dissolving their political connection with another?*

When that people or their rulers, "oppress them by manifestly unjust and long-continued abuses and usurpations." In such case, "a decent respect for the opinions of mankind requires them to declare the causes which impel them to separate."

23. *What two political truths does the Declaration affirm to be self-evident?*

That "all men are created equal; and that they are endowed with certain unalienable rights; among which are Life, Liberty, and the pursuit of Happiness."

24. *What should be the design of Government?*

To secure these rights.

25. *From whom are the just powers of Government derived?*

"From the consent of the governed, whose right it is to alter or abolish their government, whenever it becomes destructive of these ends."

26. *To authorize the formation of a new government, upon what principles should it be organized?*

"Upon such principles, and in such form, as seem most likely to effect the safety and happiness of the governed."

27. *What hitherto has experience shown?*

"That mankind are more disposed to suffer while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed."

28. *When is it the right and duty of a people to throw off their government?*

"When a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism."

29. *What is said of the conduct of the Colonies?*

That "it had been that of patient forbearance."

30. *What is said of the history of George III., then the King of Great Britain?*

That "it was a history of repeated injuries and usurpations; all having in direct object the establishment of absolute tyranny over the Colonies."

31. *To prove the truth of this assertion, to whom was an appeal made?*

"To a candid world."

32. *To what laws had the King refused his assent?*

"To laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good."

33. *Specify the instances to which this clause alludes.*

The Colonial Assemblies had, from time to time, passed laws regulating their Commercial relations, their Colonial currency, and their Representation in the British Parliament. To these laws the King had refused his assent.

34. *State other instances.*

After the Stamp Act excitements, Secretary Conway informed the Americans, that their tumults should be overlooked, provided that Assemblies should make full compensation for all public property which had been destroyed.

35. *In complying with this requisition, what did the Assembly of Massachusetts deem necessary?*

That it would "be wholesome and necessary for the public good, to grant free pardon to all who had engaged in the disturbances." The Assembly passed a law to that effect, but the refusal of the Royal assent rendered it nugatory.

36. *What laws had the King prohibited his Governors to pass?*

"Laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation, till his assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he had utterly neglected to attend to them."

37. *Name some instance.*

In January, 1764, the Assembly of New York had taken measures to conciliate the Six Nations, and other Indian tribes. Representations were made to the King, that the Colonies were making allies of the Indians, in view of asserting their independence of the British Crown; upon which, instructions were issued to all the Governors, to desist from such alliances, or to suspend these operations until the Royal assent should be obtained.

38. *Did the King give his assent?*

He utterly neglected to do so.

39. *What other laws had he refused to pass?*

"Laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the Legislature."

40. *How was this instanced in the case of Massachusetts?*

By the Assembly of that Colony, a law was passed in 1770, for taxing officers of the British Government residing in the Colony the Governor of the same was ordered to withhold his assent from such Tax Bill. This being a violation of the Colonial charter, the people justly complained.

41. *What measures were pursued toward the Assembly?*

It was prorogued from time to time, and thus laws of great importance were utterly neglected.

42. *What law did Parliament pass in the spring of 1774?*

It passed a law by which the popular representative system in the province of Quebec was annulled.

43. *What power was granted to officers appointed by the Crown?*

They had all power as legislators, except that of levying taxes.

44. *Of what religion were the Canadians?*

They were Roman Catholics.

45. *How were they pacified under the new order of things?*

By having their religion declared the established one of the Province.

46. *How did this affect large districts of Protestants bordering on Nova Scotia?*

They felt it to be a great grievance; and because they remonstrated against it, all their other petitions were unheeded. They were plainly told by Governor Carlton, that they must cease their clamor about representatives, before they should have any new commercial laws.

47. *What other bill passed in 1774?*

A bill for "better regulating the government in the Province of Massachusetts Bay," passed, to provide for the abridgment of the privileges of popular elections, to take the government out of the hands of the people, and to vest the nomination of Judges, Magistrates, and even Sheriffs, in the Crown.

48. *Of what were they thus deprived?*

They were deprived of free representation in the Legislature.

49. *What did the Governor refuse to do?*

He refused to issue warrants for the election of members of the Assembly.

50. *What did the Assembly call?*

They called a convention of the freemen, and asked for the passage of "laws for the accommodation of large districts of people."

51. *What were they told?*

They were told that no laws should be passed until they should quietly relinquish the right of representation in the Legislature.

52. *How does the Declaration designate the right of representation?*

As "a right inestimable to the people, and formidable to tyrants only."

53. *What had the British King done in respect to Legislative Bodies?*

He had called together Legislative Bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the repository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

54. *Illustrate this.*

When the Boston Port Bill was passed, the Custom House, Courts, and other public offices, were removed to Salem. The public records, however, were kept at Boston; and so well guarded by two regiments of British soldiers, that the patriotic members of the Colonial Assembly could have no reference to them.

55. *Did this produce any effect on the Assembly?*

It utterly failed; for although compelled to meet at "a place distant from the repository of the public records," and in a place extremely uncomfortable, they "were not fatigued into compliance;" but, in spite of the Governor, they elected Delegates to a General Congress, and adopted measures for the public good.

56. *What had the King repeatedly dissolved?*

"He had repeatedly dissolved Representative Bodies, for opposing with manly firmness his invasion on the rights of the people."

57. *What did the Assembly of Massachusetts do in 1768?*

They issued a circular to other Assemblies, inviting their co-operation in asserting the principle that Great Britain had no right to tax the Colonies without their consent.

58. *What was Lord Hillsborough directed to do?*

Lord Hillsborough, the Secretary of Foreign Affairs, was directed to order the Governor of Massachusetts to require the Assembly of that Province to rescind its obnoxious resolutions, expressed in the circular; and in case of a refusal, he was ordered to dissolve them immediately.

59. *What warning was given to other Colonial Assemblies?*

They were warned not to imitate the example of Massachusetts; and, in consequence of their refusal to accede to the wishes of the King, they were repeatedly dissolved.

60. *What was the cause of the dissolution of the Assemblies of Virginia and North Carolina?*

They were dissolved for denying the right of the King to tax the Colonies, or to remove offenders out of the country for trial.

61. *What was the consequence of the several Assemblies entertaining the proposition to elect Delegates to a General Congress in 1774?*

Nearly all of them were dissolved.

62. *After such dissolution, what had the King refused to do?*

"To cause others to be elected."

63. *What had resulted?*

"The legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, had returned to the people at large for their exercise."

64. *To what danger had the State in the meantime been exposed?*

"To all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within."

65. *What is said of the refusal of the Assembly of New York, in 1766, to comply with the provision of the Mutiny Act?*

Its legislative functions were suspended by Royal authority.

66. *To what was the State exposed during the suspension of its Legislative functions?*

It remained exposed, for several months, "to all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within."

67. *Was the Assembly of Massachusetts, after its dissolution in July, 1768, permitted to meet again?*

It was not permitted to meet until the last Wednesday of May, 1769.

68. *What did they then find?*

They found the places of meeting surrounded by a military guard, with cannon pointed directly at their place of meeting.

69. *What did they do?*

They refused to act under such tyrannical restraint, and their legislative powers returned to the people.

70. *What had the King endeavored to prevent?*

"The population of these States."

71. *By what means?*

"By obstructing the laws for the naturalization of foreigners, refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands."

72. *Explain this.*

Soon after the accession of George III., secret agents were sent to spy out the condition of the colonists. They reported to the British Ministry, that a large number of Germans, possessed of free sentiments as regards government, were emigrating to the Colonies. The King was advised to discourage these.

73. *What measures were accordingly taken?*

Obstacles were thrown in the way of obtaining lands, and immigrants, except from England, were prohibited.

74. *Why was the immigration of the French Catholics into Maryland prohibited?*

Because they were found to be too democratic in their sentiments; the King, therefore, was anxiously solicitous not to spread their doctrines through the Colonies.

75. *What was further done to prevent immigration into the Colonies?*

The easy condition on which actual settlers could obtain land on the Western frontiers was very much restricted, and by the dawning of the Revolution, immigration to the vast solitudes beyond the Alleghanies had almost ceased.

76. *How had the King obstructed the administration of justice?*

"He had obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers."

77. *What Act was passed by Parliament in 1774?*

The appointment of Judges was taken from the people of Massachusetts, and assumed by the King; they were made dependent on him for their salaries, and subject to his removal.

78. *How were their salaries paid?*

With moneys drawn from the people by the Commissioners of Customs, in the form of duties.

79. *What other deprivations were included in this Act?*

In most cases, the benefits of trial by jury and the "administration of justice" were effectually obstructed.

80. *What other grievances existed in other Colonies?*

Similar grievances concerning the courts of law existed in other Colonies; and, throughout the Anglo-American domain, there was but a semblance of justice left.

81. *What did the people do when Assemblies were dissolved?*

They met in conventions, and endeavored to establish "Judiciary powers."

82. *Upon what had the King made Judges dependent?*

"He had made Judges dependent upon his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries."

83. *How were their salaries paid?*

They were paid out of the National treasury, instead of having them depend upon the Colonial Assemblies, which would, perhaps, have checked the tendency to petty tyranny.

84. *What was the consequence of their being independent of the people?*

They had no sympathies with them.

85. *What did the Judges become in consequence?*

They became fit instruments of oppression, and ready at all times to do the bidding of the King and his ministers.

86. *What did the Colonial Assemblies do?*

They protested against the measure. Committees of correspondence were formed throughout the Colonies; and these constituted the first directing power of the Revolution.

87. *What did the Assembly of Massachusetts do, when, in 1774, Chief Justice Oliver declared it his intention to receive his salary from the Crown?*

They proceeded to impeach him, and petitioned the Governor for his removal.

88. *What did the Governor do?*

He refused compliance, and great irritation ensued.

89. *In respect to new offices and new officers, what had the King done?*

"He had erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance."

90. *Give instances of this.*

After the passage of the Stamp Act, stamp distributors were appointed in every considerable town. The Acts of 1766 and 1767, for the collection of duties, created swarms of officers with high salaries; and as these were paid with the people's money, their substance thus was eaten out.

91. *What had the King done in respect to standing armies?*

"He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies without the consent of our Legislatures."

92. *What did Great Britain do, after the Treaty of Peace with France, in 1763?*

She left quite a large number of troops in America, and required the colonists to contribute to their support.

93. *Was there any necessity for this?*

There was no necessity for a standing army, except to repress the growing spirit of Democracy among the colonists, and to force compliance with the taxation laws.

94. *Against what had the colonists always protested?*

Against the presence of troops among them; and when armies were sent to awe them into submission, they openly rebelled. It was one of these standing armies, which the patriots of Lexington, Concord, and Bunker Hill so manfully resisted.

95. *What had the King done in respect to the military?*

"He had affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power."

96. *Who was Commander-in-Chief of the British forces in America?*

General Gage; appointed Governor of Massachusetts, in 1774.

97. *Why did he encamp several regiments of soldiers upon Boston Common?*

He wished to put the measures of the Boston Port Bill into execution.

98. *What of the military power there, and also in New York?*

It was made independent of, and superior to, the civil power and this, too, in a time of peace, before any rebellious organizations on the part of the colonists.

99. *What had the King done in respect to a foreign jurisdiction?*

"He had combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our Constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws, giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation."

100. *For what purpose was a Board of Trade established?*

A Board of Trade, acting independent of Colonial Legislation, was established for the enforcement of Revenue Laws.

101. *On what principles was it established?*

It was established on principles altogether foreign to the Constitution of any of the Colonies.

102. *What is said of the establishment of this power, and the remodeling of the Admiralty Courts, so as to exclude trial by jury therein?*

They, in most cases, rendered the Government fully obnoxious to the charge of subjecting the Colonies to a jurisdiction foreign to their Constitution.

103. *How did the people act?*

They felt their degradation under such petty tyranny, and resolved to spurn it.

104. *What was the result in Boston?*

The Government was obliged to recede.

105. *In 1774, how were the Members of the Council of Massachusetts chosen?*

They were, by a Parliamentary enactment, chosen by the King, to hold their offices during his pleasure.

106. *What was given to the Governor?*

Almost unlimited power.

107. *What was the condition of the people?*

The people were subjected to "a jurisdiction foreign to their Constitution," by these creatures of Royalty.

108. *What is the first Act enumerated in the list of wrongs?*

The Act "for quartering large bodies of armed troops among us."

109. *What was done in 1768?*

Seven hundred troops were landed in Boston, under cover of the cannons of British armed ships in the harbor. Early in the following year, Parliament voted ten thousand men for the American service.

110. *To what other Act had he given his assent?*

"To an Act for protecting them by a mock trial from pun-

ishment, from any murders which they should commit on the indabitants of these States."

111. *What occurred in 1768?*

In 1768, two citizens of Annapolis, Maryland, were murdered by some mariners belonging to a British armed ship.

112. *What of the trial?*

It was a mockery of justice; and in the face of clear evidence against them, they were acquitted.

113. *What occurred in the difficulties with the Regulators in North Carolina in 1771?*

Some of the soldiers, who had shot down citizens when standing up in defense of their rights, were tried for murder and acquitted. This has been justly claimed by the Carolinians as *the first blood shed in the American Revolution.*

114. *What did Governor Tryon do?*

He mercilessly hung six prisoners, who were certainly entitled to the benefits of the laws of war, if his own soldiers were.

115. *What was the next Act complained of?*

"His assent to an Act for cutting off our trade with all parts of the world."

116. *What of the Navigation Laws?*

They were oppressive in character.

117. *With what authority were the British Naval Commanders clothed, in 1764?*

They were clothed with the authority of Custom-House officers, and they completely broke the profitable trade which the Colonies had long enjoyed with the Spanish and French West Indies.

118. *Of what was this a violation?*

It was a violation of the old Navigation Act of 1660, which had almost been ineffectual.

119. *What did Lord North finally conclude to do?*

He finally concluded to punish the refractory colonists of New England.

120. *How did he resolve to punish them?*

By stopping their commerce with Great Britain, Ireland, and the West Indies.

121. *What other prohibition was enacted?*

Fishing on the Banks of Newfoundland was also prohibited; and as far as Parliamentary enactments could accomplish it, their "trade with all parts of the world" was cut off.

122. *What other Act did the King give his assent to?*

An Act "for imposing taxes on us without our consent."

123. *What other impositions were there in addition to the revenue taxes?*

The Stamp Act was passed, and duties on paper, painters' colors, glass, tea, &c., were levied. This was the chief cause of contention between the colonists and the Imperial Government.

124. *For what were the colonists contending?*

They were contending for the great political truth, that TAXATION AND REPRESENTATION ARE INSEPARABLE.

125. *For what was Great Britain contending?*

She was contending for power, and the means of replenishing an exhausted treasury.

126. *What Act was next complained of?*

"The one which deprived us in many cases of the benefits of trial by jury."

127. *After the Commissioners of Customs were driven from Boston, in 1768, what Act was passed?*

An Act was passed, which placed violations of the revenue laws under the jurisdiction of the Admiralty Courts.

128. *By whom were the offenders tried?*

They were tried by a creature of the Crown, and were thus deprived "of the benefits of trial by jury."

129. *State the next complaint.*

“For transporting us across the seas, to be tried for pretended offenses.”

130. *What bill was brought forward in 1774?*

A bill was brought forward, providing that any person in the Province of Massachusetts, who should be accused of riot, resistance of magistrates, or of the officers of customs, for murder, or any other offense, might, at the option of the Governor, be taken for trial to another Colony, or transported to Great Britain for that purpose.

131. *What did the British Minister pretend?*

He pretended that impartial justice could not be administered in Massachusetts.

132. *What fact militated against this?*

The British officer, Captain Preston, that had been tried and acquitted by a Boston jury, refuted such pretensions.

133. *Did the bill meet with opposition?*

It was violently opposed in Parliament, yet it became a law.

134. *What was decreed?*

It was decreed that Americans might be “transported beyond the seas, to be tried for pretended offenses,” or real crimes.

135. *State the next complaint.*

Parliament had passed an Act “for abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring Province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to make it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule in the Colonies.”

136. *What did the British Ministry deem prudent?*

They thought it prudent to take early steps to secure a footing in America, so near the scene of inevitable rebellion as to allay the gathering storm.

137. *What of the investing of a Legislative Council in Canada, with all powers except levying of taxes?*

It was a great stride toward that absolute military rule, which bore sway there, within eighteen months afterward.

138. *For what did the Canadians give up their political rights?*

They gave them up for doubtful religious privileges. She remained a part of the British empire, when her sister Colonies rejoiced in freedom.

139. *State the complaint in reference to the abrogation of Charters.*

"For taking away our Charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering fundamentally the forms of our governments."

140. *What right did Lord Dunmore and Sir James Wright, of Georgia, and Lord William Campbell, of South Carolina, assume in 1775?*

They, in several cases, after dissolving Colonial Assemblies, assumed the right to make proclamations stand in the place of statute law.

141. *What was the consequence?*

They were driven from their respective Colonies.

142. *What complaint is made about suspending our Legislatures?*

A Parliamentary Act had been passed "for suspending our Legislatures, and declaring Parliament invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever."

143. *What other complaints were urged?*

"That the King had abdicated the government here, by declaring us out of his protection and waging war against us."

"He had plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burned our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people."

"He had transported large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paral-

leled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation."

144. *How had the King abdicated government in the Colonies?*

By sending armies to make war against them, and declaring them out of his protection.

145. *What infamous acts of the Government did he sanction?*

He sanctioned the acts of Governors in employing the Indians against his subjects.

146. *What did he himself do?*

He bargained for the employment of German hirelings.

147. *What did the Naval Commanders do, when clothed with the power of Custom-House officers?*

They seized many American vessels, and the British ships of war "plundered our seas" whenever an American vessel could be found.

148. *What towns were burnt?*

Charlestown, Falmouth, (now Portland, in Maine,) and Norfolk were burnt.

149. *What was transpiring at the very time when the Declaration was being read to the Assembled Congress, June 28th, 1776?*

The fleet of Sir Peter Parker was making an attack upon Charleston, South Carolina.

150. *What had the King done with captives?*

"He had constrained our fellow-citizens taken captive on the high seas to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their own hands."

151. *What Act of Parliament was passed toward the close of December, 1775?*

An Act was passed authorizing the capture of all American

vessels, and directing the crews of armed vessels to be treated as slaves, and not as prisoners of war.

152. *What were they compelled to do?*

They were to be enrolled for "the service of his Majesty;" and were thus compelled to fight for the Crown, even against their own friends and countrymen.

153. *How was this Act condemned on the floor of Parliament?*

It was condemned as an Act unworthy of a Christian people, and "a refinement of cruelty unknown among savage nations."

154. *What had he excited among the people?*

"He had excited domestic insurrection among us, and had endeavored to bring upon the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions."

155. *With what was Dunmore charged?*

He was charged with a design to employ the Indians against the Virginians as early as 1774.

156. *What did Dunmore endeavor to do while ravaging the Virginia coast in 1768 and 1776?*

He endeavored to excite the slaves against their masters.

157. *In what other infamous act was he, with Governor Gage and others, concerned?*

He, under the instructions of the British ministry, was concerned in exciting the Shawnees, and other savages of the Ohio country, against the white people.

158. *Among whom were emissaries sent?*

Emissaries were sent among the Cherokees and Creeks, for the purpose of exciting them against the whites.

159. *Who were found in arms when the war began?*

All the tribes of the Six Nations, except the Oneidas, were found in arms with the British when the war began.

160. *What thence occurred?*

Dreadful massacres occurred on the borders of the several Colonies.

161. *In every stage of these oppressions, what had the Colonies done?*

"In every stage of these oppressions, they had petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; their repeated petitions had been answered by repeated injuries.

"A prince, whose character was thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, was unfit to be the ruler of a free people."

162. *What had the Colonies done for ten years?*

They petitioned for redress of grievances "in the most humble terms," and loyal manner: first by the address of the Colonial Congress of 1765, and afterward by those of the Continental Congresses of 1774 and 1775.

163. *In reference to their British brethren, what was declared?*

"Nor had we been wanting to our British brethren. We had warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their Legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We had reminded them of the circumstances of our immigration and settlement here. We had appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and had conjured them by the ties of common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence."

164. *How was the appeal answered?*

"They were deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity."

165. *In conclusion, what did the Congress declare?*

"We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind—enemies in war; in peace, friends."

166. *To whom did they make their appeal?*

"To the Supreme Judge of the Universe, for the rectitude of their intention."

167. *What did they publish and declare?*

That "the United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, Free and Independent States."

168. *By whose authority did they declare this?*

"In the name, and by the authority of the good people of the Colonies."

169. *From what did they declare themselves absolved?*

"From all allegiance to the British Crown, and from all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain."

170. *What sovereign power did they, in consequence, assume?*

"Full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do."

171. *In conclusion, what did they pledge?*

"And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, they mutually pledged to each other, their Lives, their Fortunes, and their Sacred Honor."

NOTE.—The Declaration will be found at the end of this work. It will be an excellent exercise for Classes to commit to memory, and recite it in concert.

CHAPTER IX.

THE CAMPAIGN OF 1776.

Position of the British Forces.

1. *Why is the Declaration considered to have been made at a favorable time?*

Because, during its discussion, no British troops had a foothold anywhere in the thirteen Colonies.

2. *At the time of its adoption, what was the position of the British forces in America?*

Since the evacuation of Boston, March 17th, 1776, General Howe had remained with his forces at Halifax.

3. *At what time did he remove them to Staten Island, New York?*

On the very day, June 28th, 1776, that Sir Henry Clinton and Sir Peter Parker were repulsed from Charleston, S. C., General Howe, with a large body of troops from Halifax, appeared off New York, and landed on Staten Island.

NOTES.—*Richard, Earl Howe*, born 1725. At the age of fourteen, sailed to the Pacific with Lord Anson, as Midshipman, and rose to the rank of Admiral at the age of twenty. Before coming to America, was promoted to Vice-Admiral of the Blue; after the American war, was made the First Lord of Admiralty; died in 1799, aged 74.

William Howe, brother of the Earl, succeeded General Gage in the chief command of British forces in America; commanded at Bunker Hill, and was afterward successful in repelling the Americans at Germantown; was succeeded in command by Sir Henry Clinton, and with his brother, the Admiral, returned to England, where he died, 1814.

Sir Peter Parker, born 1723; entered the Navy at an early age, and rose rapidly to distinction; wounded in an attack on Charleston, 28th of June, 1776; joined Lord Howe in his attack on New York shortly afterward; commanded the squadron which took possession of Rhode Island; after the war, was created a Baronet; became a Member of Parliament, and advanced to a high station in the British Navy; died in 1811, aged 88.

Sir Henry Clinton, a Major-General in the British army, served in the Hanoverian and American wars; fought bravely at Bunker Hill; was afterward unsuccessful in attacking Charleston and New York; in 1776, defeated the Americans on Long Island; in 1778, succeeded Howe in command at Philadelphia; forced to retire therefrom; captured Charleston in 1779; negotiated with Arnold for the surrender of West Point; superseded General Carleton in 1782; and died in 1795.

4. *By what forces was he afterward joined?*

On the 11th of July, he was joined by Sir Henry Clinton, recently arrived from South Carolina; on the 12th, his army was still further augmented by the advent of his brother, Admiral Lord Howe, with a fleet and land-forces from England; and by the 1st of August, other vessels arriving with a part of the Hessian hirelings, made up, in all, an army of nearly thirty-five thousand of the best troops of Europe.

NOTE.—The Hessians were troops, furnished principally by the Landgrave of Hesse Cassel, a German Principality. Ignorant, brutal, and blood-thirsty, they were alike hated by the patriots, and despised by the regular British Army. These troops cost the British Government almost one million of dollars.

Number and Position of the American Forces.

5. *What was the number and position of the American forces at this time?*

To oppose the invasion of the enemy, Washington had an army amounting nominally to twenty-seven thousand—undisciplined, badly provided with arms and ammunition; many of them sick, and numbering, in fact, not more than seventeen thousand effective men.

The American Army on the Frontiers.

6. *Describe the condition of that portion of the American army which had been sent to Canada.*

Upon the frontier of Canada, Congress had no less than thirteen regiments, consisting of New York and New England troops. These were under command of General Schuyler, who was particularly unpopular with the latter. Dissensions, disease, and desertions prevailed, and in less than three months from the opening of the campaign, the army lost more than five thousand men.

NOTE.—*Philip Schuyler*, born in Albany, N. Y., 1733, was a Captain under Sir William Johnson in 1775, and actively engaged, in civil affairs, until the Revolution. While preparing to invade Canada, was superseded in command by General Gates; was a Senator in Congress, in the latter part of his life, and died in 1804.

7. *What did Congress resolve upon?*

At this period, the American army was under the direction of a Board of War, appointed by Congress. Every thing was in a state of confusion; the Board, therefore, determined to recall the forces from the frontiers of Canada. A council of war decided that Crown Point was not tenable, and the troops, short of provisions, and suffering from small-pox, fell back to Ticonderoga.

8. *What British officer ascended Lake Champlain to attack this post?*

Sir Guy Carleton, with a small fleet of well-armed boats, which he brought with him from Montreal.

NOTE.—*Sir Guy Carleton*, Captain-General and Governor of Quebec, during the Revolutionary war. Successfully resisted the attack of Montgomery and Arnold on Quebec, in 1775; succeeded Sir Henry Clinton, as commander-in-chief of the British forces, in 1782, and arrived in New York in May; in November, 1783, evacuated the city, peace having been declared. Died in England, 1808, aged 83. His kind treatment to American prisoners, is still gratefully remembered.

9. *What American officer was sent to interrupt him?*

Benedict Arnold. To prevent the whole fleet of the enemy from attacking him at once, he chose a position in advance of Crown Point, between an island and the main shore. An engagement followed. Of the American vessels, one was burned, another sunk, while the rest, greatly damaged, sailed off to take shelter under the guns of Ticonderoga. A few of them reached that point; the others, after making a brave resistance, were run ashore, and set on fire by Arnold to save them from the enemy.

10. *What did Carleton now do?*

He took possession of Crown Point, where he was joined by his army. In October, he sent advance parties against Ticonderoga; but that place being fortified by General Gates with eight thousand regulars and militia, Carleton retired down the lake, and put his troops in winter-quarters.

NOTE.—*Horatio Gates*, a native of England, and bred to the army. First Adjutant, and afterward Major-General of the Continental army. At the close of the war, retired to his estate in Virginia, and finally resided in New York, where he died, 1806, aged 78 years.

11. *Did the Americans now abandon the post at Ticonderoga?*

Almost entirely. The militia disbanded at once; and the regulars, having but a short time to serve, retired with General Gates to join Washington in New York.

Howe attempts the Capture of New York.

12. *What did Lord Howe determine upon, after gathering his forces in New York?*

Upon the capture of New York city; but, previous to the attack, Lord Howe wrote a letter to "George Washington, Esq.," offering terms of accommodation to the Americans.

13. *What was Washington's dignified behavior on this occasion?*

He returned the letter unopened, saying, that it did not express his public character, and, that as a private individual, he had no right to receive any communication from an agent of the King.

14. *What offers were made by General Howe?*

He offered pardon to all for past offenses; but Washington replied, they had committed none, and therefore did not require any pardon—that they were in *arms* to defend their *rights*.

15. *Of what was Washington now assured, and what preparations did he make?*

He was assured that warlike demonstrations would speedily follow, and accordingly made preparations to fortify New York.

16. *Why did the British desire to gain possession of New York?*

On account of its central position, and the ease with which its occupation could be maintained.

Washington defends New York.

17. *What was Washington's plan?*

To defend the city, and thus frustrate the designs of General Howe.

18. *To effect this, what did Washington do?*

He issued a proclamation prohibiting all intercourse with the enemy's shipping, and placed the city under martial law.

Anecdote.—About this time, a plot was discovered for seizing Washington, and conveying him on board one of the British ships. The abduction was to have been accomplished by certain of his body-guard, corrupted for the purpose. One of them was tried, found guilty, and shot.

19. *How was the American army at this time divided?*

The greatest part of it was stationed in New York, a second division at Ticonderoga, and a third was left in Massachusetts.

20. *In the spring of 1776, what had General Greene been ordered to do?*

To occupy Long Island; which he did by thoroughly examining the ground, establishing posts, and making preparations for meeting the enemy.

21. *At this time, what misfortune befell him?*

He was seized with a severe bilious fever, by which he was so prostrated that Putnam was ordered to succeed him. Ignorant of the ground, the latter was wholly unprepared for making a successful defense.

NOTE.—*Nathaniel Greene*, born of Quaker parents on Rhode Island, 1740, was an anchor-smith, pursuing his trade, when the Revolution broke out. He hastened to Boston after the skirmish at Lexington; and, from that time, until the close of the war, was one of the most useful officers in the army; died near Savannah in 1786, and was buried in that city.—Read “*Simms' Life of Greene.*”

Israel Putnam, born in Salem, Mass., 1718; was a very useful officer during the French and Indian war, and in active service in the Continental army until 1779, when bodily infirmity compelled him to retire: died in 1790, aged 72.—Read “*Humphrey's Life of Putnam.*”

Battle of Long Island, August 28th.

22. *What was the position of the American forces on Long Island?*

General Putnam, with one division, occupied Brooklyn, while Generals Sullivan and Stirling guarded the coast from Bedford to Jamaica.

NOTE.—*John Sullivan*, born in Maine, 1740; was a Delegate in the first Continental Congress, 1774, and one of the first eight Brigadiers in the Continental army. He resigned his commission in 1779; became a Member of Congress in 1780; was several times Governor of New Hampshire; and died, while District Judge, in 1795, aged 55.

William Alexander, usually called Lord Stirling, was a descendant of the Scotch Earl of Stirling; was born in the city of New York, 1726; became attached to the patriot cause, and was an active officer during the war; died at Albany, 1783, aged 57.

23. *When, and where, did the British forces land, and how were they received by the inhabitants?*

On the 22d of August, the British forces, under Generals Clinton, Cornwallis, Percy, and Grant, landed on the southern shore of Long Island. On doing so, the inhabitants fled in terror—many of them burning their houses and provisions to prevent the enemy from obtaining them.

NOTE.—*Charles Cornwallis, Marquis*, born 1736; served as Major-General under Howe and Clinton in the American war; gained several victories; finally besieged in Yorktown; compelled to surrender, October 19th, 1781; served very successfully as Governor of India—first in 1786, and last in 1805; was Lord Lieutenant of Ireland when that country was united to England; and died in India, in 1805, aged 67.

24. *What roads did the British take?*

A range of hills, running from east to west, separated the American from the British army. Over these hills were three roads—the one by the Narrows was taken by General Grant; the second, by Flatbush, was taken by General Heister, with his Hessian troops; while the third, by way of Flatland, was occupied by the column under Generals Clinton and Cornwallis.

25. *Was it important that these passes should have been guarded by the Americans?*

It was all important; and in their neglecting to do so, General Clinton, on the morning of the 27th of August, gained possession of one of the defiles without any resistance.

26. *What happened to the American forces under General Sullivan, on the morning of the 26th?*

The Hessians, aided by a detachment under General Grant, made an attack on the Americans, who had been drawn up un-

der General Sullivan to receive them. While fighting bravely, the approach of General Clinton's column was announced, and in this desperate situation Sullivan ordered a retreat, in hopes of reaching the American lines at Brooklyn, where General Putnam was posted.

27. *Did Sullivan succeed in this attempt?*

No; he was intercepted by the light infantry and dragoons of General Clinton; and being driven back upon the Hessians, after a desperate fight, he was compelled to surrender himself and division as prisoners of war.

28. *How was Cornwallis met by the American division of General Stirling?*

With brave resistance; but overcome by the superior forces of the enemy, Stirling and most of his men were obliged to surrender.

29. *What was the result of the day?*

Greatly disastrous to the Americans. They lost one thousand men, and eighty-two of their officers were made prisoners—among them, Generals Sullivan and Stirling. The British loss was estimated at four hundred and fifty.

30. *During these engagements, where was Washington?*

Washington, during the heat of the engagement, had crossed over to Brooklyn, and on seeing some of his best troops slaughtered or taken, was moved to anguish. Prudence, however, forbade his calling any of his forces from New York, as they could in no event have been equal to the army of the enemy.

31. *Where was Greene?*

On his sick-bed, within hearing of the roar of battle. As explosion after explosion struck his ear, his excitement became intense; and learning how dreadfully his favorite regiment had been torn to pieces, he could contain himself no longer, but burst into an agony of grief.

32. *What has been said of this battle, and against whose advice was it fought?*

It has been considered the most imprudent and unskillful one fought during the war, and was against the advice and wish of Washington.

Americans retreat from Long Island, August 29, 1776.

33. *On the morning after the battle, what did Washington do?*

He crossed over to Long Island, and was happy to find that the British had not pursued their victory beyond the front of Putnam's line, where they had encamped. Too weak to hazard an assault upon the enemy, he resolved to retreat.

34. *How did Providence favor the execution of his plan?*

A thick fog enveloped in obscurity the whole of Long Island on the morning of the 29th; while in the city opposite, the atmosphere was perfectly clear.

35. *How did Washington conduct the retreat?*

Seldom, if ever, was a retreat conducted with more ability and prudence, or under more favorable auspices.

36. *When was the retreat from Long Island made?*

On the evening of the 29th of August, the troops began to move in the greatest silence.

37. *What prevented their immediate passage?*

A violent north-east wind, and the ebb tide, which rendered the current very rapid, for a time prevented their passage; but fortunately, the wind suddenly veered in their favor, and enabled them to reach the opposite side.

38. *When did the English discover the retreat of the Americans?*

It was not until the next morning, when the sun was already high, that the English perceived that the Americans had abandoned their camp, and were sheltered from pursuit.

Anecdote.—During the night, a woman residing near the present Fulton Ferry, where the Americans embarked, sent her negro servant to inform the British of the movement. The negro fell into the hands of the Hessians. They, not understanding a word of his message, detained him until so late in the night, that his information was of no advantage to them.

39. *What delayed Lord Howe from following in pursuit of the Americans?*

Still wishing to bring about accommodations with the Americans, while he could not recognize Congress as a legal body, he invited a conference with such of its members as were desirous of peace.

40. *How did Congress act?*

Congress replied, that as they were the representatives of the Free and Independent States of America, it was impossible for them to send any of their members to confer with the English commanders in their individual capacity; but as an accommodation was very desirable, they would direct a committee to receive the proposal of the British Government. The committee appointed, were Dr. Franklin, John Adams, and Edward Rutledge.

41. *What was the result of their conference with Lord Howe?*

The conference was altogether ineffectual. His Lordship could not acknowledge the deputies as the commissioners of a free people, nor would the deputies treat with him on any other terms.

42. *Was the conference attended with any good effect to the Americans?*

It arrested the enemy in the career of victory, and suspended, during its progress, the operations of the campaign. It afforded a pause to the dispirited Americans, and gave them time to rally their despairing spirits.

43. *The conference having failed, what course did Lord Howe take?*

He determined to drive the Americans from New York. With this design, a part of his fleet doubled Long Island and appeared in the Sound; while the main body, entering the harbor, took a position nearly within cannon-shot of the city.

44. *In this posture of affairs, upon what did Washington determine?*

On the 12th September he called a Council of War, which determined to send the military stores to a safe position higher up the river, to repair to, and fortify Harlem on the upper part of New York Island, and then to abandon the city.

45. *When did the enemy advance upon New York, and what position did they take?*

On the 15th of September, a strong detachment of the enemy landed at Kipp's, about three miles above New York. The troops placed there to defend the landing fled without firing a gun, and communicated the panic to two Connecticut brigades, which were marching to support the post.

Anecdote.—Greatly exasperated at such dastardly conduct, Washington threw his hat on the ground, exclaiming: "Are these the men with whom I am to defend America?" Snapping his pistol at some of them, and drawing his sword in the bootless effort to check others, he became utterly regardless of his own safety, and was so near the enemy, that he might easily have been taken prisoner. One of his aids seized the reins of his horse, and hurried Washington from the point of danger.

Battle of White Plains, October 28, 1776.

46. *On retiring from New York, what position did Washington occupy?*

He occupied, for a short time, the heights of Harlem; but finding his position at that point too hazardous, he removed, and with a part of his forces, took post at White Plains.

NOTE.—Wishing to ascertain the exact condition of the British army, Washington engaged Captain Nathan Hale, of Knowlton's regiment, to visit their camps on Long Island. He was caught, taken to Howe's head-quarters at New York, and executed as a spy by the brutal Provost Marshal, Cunningham. He was not allowed to have a Bible nor clergyman during his last hours, nor to send letters to his family or friends. At the place of execution, he exclaimed: "I lament that I have but one life to lose for my country."

47. *What engagement took place on the 28th of October?*

The British followed, and on the 28th of October, a partial engagement ensued, during which several hundred fell on both sides; but neither party could claim a decided advantage.

48. *What did Washington do after this battle?*

Although not defeated, Washington wisely removed his forces to North Castle, about five miles further north.

Attack on Fort Washington, Nov. 16, 1776.49. *What was now the design of the British General.*

As the British General indicated an intention of attacking the American posts on the Hudson, with a view of penetrating into New Jersey, Washington, leaving three thousand troops with Colonel Magraw, for the defense of Fort Washington, crossed the Hudson, and joined General Greene, in his camp, at Fort Lee.

50. *Describe the attack on Fort Washington.*

It was attacked on the 16th of November, by a strong force; and although the defense made by Colonel Magraw was resolute, he was compelled to surrender to the enemy; one thousand of whom, however, had been killed in the assault.

Americans retreat through New Jersey.51. *What took place two days after?*

Lord Cornwallis crossed the Hudson with six thousand men, and proceeded against Fort Lee. Fortunately the garrison had time to escape, and effected a junction with Washington, who, meanwhile, had retreated to Newark on the south side of the Passaic.

52. *To what place did Washington next retreat?*

Finding Newark too near his triumphant foe, Washington next retreated to Brunswick; and Cornwallis, on the same day entered Newark.

53. *Through what places, and in what manner, was the retreat continued?*

The retreat was continued from Brunswick to Princeton, thence to Trenton, and from that place to the Pennsylvania side of the Delaware.

Great Distress of the American Army, Dec. 1776.

54. *What circumstances rendered the retreat through New Jersey peculiarly trying?*

The retreat through New Jersey was made under circumstances of the deepest depression. The Americans had just lost the two Forts, Washington and Lee, and with the former nearly three thousand men. Numbers of the militia were daily claiming to be discharged; and even regular troops, as if struck with despair, deserted in bodies.

NOTE.—“Day after day, the militia left the army, as their terms of enlistment expired, and many of the regulars deserted. Royalists were swarming all over the country through which they passed; and when, on the 7th of December, Washington reached the frozen banks of the Delaware, at Trenton, he had less than three thousand men, most of them wretchedly clad, half-famished, and without tents to shelter them from the biting winter air. On the 8th, that remnant of an army crossed the Delaware in boats, and sat down, almost in despair, upon the Pennsylvania shore.”

55. *On the day that Washington crossed the Delaware, what happened in Rhode Island to the Americans?*

A British fleet, and six hundred of the army, under Sir Peter Parker, who had been repulsed at Sullivan's Island, South Carolina, proceeded to Narraganset Bay, and took possession of Rhode Island.

56. *When and how was General Lee taken prisoner?*

On the 13th of December, General Lee, who had been left in command of the forces stationed on the Hudson, having incautiously wandered from the main body, was surprised and taken prisoner by the enemy.

NOTE.—The capture of General Lee was regarded as a great misfortune by the Americans; for at that time, he engaged, in a high degree, the esteem and confidence of the army and of the country. On the other hand, the British exulted in his captivity, as equal to a victory, declaring that they “had taken the American Palladium.”

57. *Amid the difficulties that surrounded him, what was the conduct of Washington?*

Washington did not seem to despair of the public safety. On the contrary, as darkness hovered around, he trimmed more

carefully the lamp of Hope ; and while the hearts of others sunk in despondency, he manifested the greater firmness, constancy, and fortitude.

The British attempt the Capture of Philadelphia.

58. *What was the next object of the British General ?*

The occupation of Philadelphia ; and the only obstacle which prevented it, was the position of Washington on the Pennsylvania side of the Delaware.

59. *What did he do in the mean time ?*

He placed about four thousand German troops along the river from Trenton to Burlington ; while strong detachments were stationed at Princeton and New Brunswick. The remainder of the British army were scattered about the villages of New Jersey.

Washington Recrosses the Delaware, December 25, 1776.

60. *What plan did Washington conceive ?*

In this state of things, Washington conceived the plan of recrossing the Delaware, and attacking the Government troops stationed at Trenton, so suddenly, as not to allow them the assistance of their main body.

61. *How did he put this project into execution ?*

On the night of the 25th of December, the American troops, consisting of two thousand four hundred men, arrived in the evening at the bank of the river.

62. *How long did it take the troops and artillery to make the passage ?*

It was expected that the passage would be effected before midnight. But the cold was so intense, and the river so obstructed with floating ice, that the landing of the artillery was not accomplished until four in the morning.

63. *What movement was made upon landing ?*

An immediate and precipitate march was made toward Tren-

ton, with the hope of reaching it before day; but a thick fog setting in, so retarded their march, that they did not accomplish their purpose until eight o'clock; yet at this late hour, the Hessians had no suspicion of the approach of the enemy.

Battle of Trenton, December 26, 1776.

64. *What was the result of the engagement with the Hessians?*

Incapable of making any defense, they surrendered to the number of nearly one thousand. Some thirty or forty were killed, among whom was Colonel-Rahl, the commanding-officer.

65. *What were the effects produced by the success of the Americans at Trenton?*

To the American cause, the success at Trenton was as auspicious as it was mortifying to the British.

66. *What did Cornwallis now do?*

To regain the ground lost, Cornwallis concentrated his forces at Princeton; and on the 2d of January, 1777, marched out to attack Washington, who had taken post at Trenton.

67. *What took place on the following morning?*

On the next morning, Washington changed his position, and while his camp-fires were burning brightly, he withdrew his men, and at sunrise, unexpectedly fell in with two British regiments, upon which a spirited contest ensued.

68. *What was the result of the engagement.*

The Americans fought well; but just as they were giving way, Washington himself headed the main body, and led them to the attack. His bravery gave impulse to his troops, and the enemy were put to route.

69. *What was done by Washington after this battle?*

He hastened forward to Princeton, where was stationed another regiment of the enemy. Of this he made three hundred prisoners, while the remainder sought safety in flight. The loss

of the Americans was not severe in numbers, though several valuable officers were killed or wounded; among the killed, the brave General Mercer; among the wounded, James Monroe, in after years, President of the United States.

NOTE.—*Hugh Mercer*, a native of Scotland, was with Washington in the French and Indian war of 1763; was wounded at Fort Duquesne, while fighting under Braddock, and left among the dead on the field. After wandering a hundred miles through the wilderness, arrived at Fort Cumberland; sided with the Americans at the breaking out of the Revolution; distinguished himself at the battle of Trenton; commanded the van of the Americans at Princeton, and while rallying his men had his horse shot under him; was surrounded by British soldiers, stabbed with bayonets; and being inhumanly beaten with muskets, died of his wounds a few days after; buried at Philadelphia, January 19, 1777, aged 56.

Result of the Victories.

70. *What is said of the result of the victories at Trenton and Princeton?*

These victories were of signal importance to the American people, and especially to the inhabitants of New Jersey, whose courage greatly revived at the result.

71. *What took place soon after?*

The Royal army went into winter-quarters at New Brunswick, and Washington retired to Morristown, where his army was generally inoculated with the small-pox. Thus closed the campaign of 1776.

CHAPTER X.

THE CAMPAIGNS OF 1777 AND 1778.

Position of the British and American Forces.

1. *At the opening of the year 1777, what disposition had been made of the British forces in America?*

Three divisions had been made; Gen. Howe, with 35,000 men, had his head-quarters at New York, Sir Guy Carleton,

and afterward Gen. Burgoyne, with 7,000 men, occupied Canada; while Gen. Prescott, with a detachment of about 5,000 men, was at Rhode Island.

2. *Where was the war now principally carried on?*

In the States of New York and Pennsylvania.

3. *At the beginning of the year, what position did Washington occupy?*

He was at Princeton, preparing for the approach of Cornwallis, who, hearing of the defeat and death of Col. Rahl, had returned to New Jersey, and was rapidly making toward the scene of disaster.

Congress solicits the Assistance of France.

4. *What measures had Congress taken for prosecuting the war?*

They invested Washington with unlimited powers; raised an army for three years, or during the war, and sent agents to Europe to solicit assistance.

5. *Who were commissioned for this purpose, and what was the result of the mission?*

Benjamin Franklin, Silas Dean, and Arthur Lee, were sent to France to obtain assistance from the French Government. This aid France was as yet unwilling to grant; though many private persons gave freely.

6. *What distinguished person was among them?*

The Marquis de La Fayette, who fitted out a vessel at his own expense, and arrived early in the year 1777. He joined the army, and was shortly after made a Major-General.

NOTE.—*Lafayette*, born in Auvergne, France, in 1758; in 1777, while not twenty years of age, espoused the American cause. Fitting out an expedition at his own expense, in April of the same year landed near Charleston. In July was appointed Major-General, and in September was wounded at Brandywine; served in Pennsylvania and Rhode Island in 1778; in 1779 embarked for France to solicit aid, which he obtained; in 1780, returning to America, marched to Virginia, raising money on his own credit to supply his troops; shared in the siege of Yorktown; again went to France, to raise a strong and decisive force, and was ready to start when peace prevented him. In 1784 he visited America by invitation.

and, on his return to France, sustained the cause of freedom, and toleration to all religious sects. In 1824, made a farewell visit to America, and died in Paris, May, 1834, in the 76th year of his age.

Tryon's Expedition, April, 1777.

7. *Describe Tryon's expedition.*

General Tryon, who had been Governor of New York, in April, 1777, went up Long Island Sound with a body of two thousand British and Tory soldiers. Landing between the villages of Norwalk and Fairfield, he marched to Danbury, destroyed a large quantity of stores belonging to the Americans, burned the town, and cruelly treated the inhabitants.

8. *How was he repulsed by the Americans?*

The patriots, under Generals Wooster, Arnold, and Sullivan, after a sharp battle at Ridgefield, drove the invaders to their ships; General Wooster was killed, and Tryon lost about three hundred of his men before he escaped to his vessel.

Battle of Brandywine, September 11th, 1777.

9. *What did General Howe now do?*

In the month of June, he retired from New Jersey to Staten Island; and afterward embarking with 16,000 men, entered the Chesapeake, and landed at the head of Elk River. General Howe, intending to capture Philadelphia, Washington, with Generals Greene, Sullivan, Wayne, and Stirling, marched to oppose him.

10. *What was the result of these proceedings?*

The battle of Brandywine was fought on the 11th of September. In it, the Americans were defeated, with a loss of 1,000 men, killed and wounded. In this battle Gen. Greene greatly distinguished himself, as did the brave Polander, Pulaski. General Lafayette, while urging on a division of the Americans, was wounded in the leg.

11. *What were the immediate consequences of this battle?*

The British took possession of Philadelphia, and after a considerable resistance, captured the forts on the Delaware.

Battle of Germantown, October 4th, 1777.

12. *What were Washington's movements, while the British were absent on this service?*

He attacked Germantown on the 4th day of October, but was repulsed with considerable loss.

13. *After the repulse at Germantown, where did Washington take up his winter-quarters?*

At Valley Forge, about twenty miles from Philadelphia. There his men passed a most grievous winter, suffering extreme distress for want of suitable supplies of food and clothing. Many officers, unable to obtain their pay, and disheartened with the service, resigned their commissions; and murmurs arose in various quarters, not only in the army, but even among powerful and popular leaders in Congress.

Affairs at the North, 1777.

14. *What important events took place at the North during this period?*

The British determined to invade the States through Canada; and, in the month of June, General Burgoyne, with an army of 7,000 men, including Canadians and Indians, passed up Lake Champlain, and attacked Ticonderoga, which was garrisoned by the Americans under General St. Clair.

NOTE.—*Arthur St. Clair*, born in Scotland and came to America in 1755; joined the American cause; accompanied the troops to Canada in 1776; was in the battle of Trenton; appointed Brigadier-General in 1776, and Major-General in 1777; served with Greene in the Southern army, and settled in Pennsylvania after the peace. Was member of Congress in 1784, and chosen president of same in 1787. In 1791, was chosen commander-in-chief of the forces to be employed against the Indians. After serving his adopted country in many capacities, died at Philadelphia, 1818, aged 84.

15. *What expedition did Burgoyne send out about this time?*

He sent out a detachment of five hundred English and one hundred Indians, under Col. Baum, to destroy the stores at Bennington, in the State of Vermont.

16. *In his confidence of victory, what order did Burgoyne give to Col. Baum?*

That he should "scour the country for horses, carriages, and cattle, and make prisoners of all officers, civil and military, acting under Congress; to tax the towns for whatever was wanted; to bring all horses fit to mount the dragoons, with as many saddles and bridles as could be found; to bring at least 1,300; the horses to be tied in strings of ten each, in order that one man might lead ten horses."

17. *How was this order executed?*

On the 16th of August, 1777, Col. Baum was met by Col. Stark and his "Green Mountain Boys." A battle ensued, Col. Baum was mortally wounded, and left Stark victor with 900 swords, 1000 stands of arms, eight loads of baggage, four brass field-pieces, and numerous horses. The loss of the British, in killed and wounded, was 934; that of the Americans not more than 200.

18. *Repeat the characteristic speech of Col. Stark, previous to the battle.*

As he beheld the enemy's column forming, he exclaimed to his men: "See, men, there are the red coats coming! we must beat them to-day, or Molly Stark's a widow!" He did beat them; and Molly Stark was not a widow, for that day at least.

19. *What engagement had taken place a few days previous, August 6th, 1777.*

General Herkimer, with the militia of the surrounding country, attempted to succor Col. Gansevoort, at Fort Schuyler, but his troops fell into an ambush of British and Indians, and were defeated with dreadful slaughter. General Herkimer was himself mortally wounded.

Burgoyne's Surrender at Saratoga, October 7th, 1777.

20. *What were the final proceedings of Burgoyne?*

Having crossed the Hudson river, and encamped at Saratoga, he was attacked by General Gates, at Stillwater, on the 19th of September. Though both sides claimed the victory, the Americans had a decided advantage; and on the 7th of October following, the battle of Saratoga was fought.

21. *What was the result of these battles?*

On the 17th of October, the British army, amounting to 5,752 men, exclusive of sick and wounded, surrendered to General Gates, at Saratoga, as prisoners of war.

22. *What anecdote is told of General Burgoyne, in connection with this defeat?*

In confidence of winning the day, he had declared that he would dine, on the afternoon of the battle, at Albany. He did dine there, but it was as a prisoner, and guest of General Schuyler. Being exchanged as a prisoner of war, he returned to England, became a Member of Parliament, and opposed a further prosecution of the war in America.

23. *How many Hessians or Germans were taken, and what was done with them?*

Two thousand four hundred were taken. At first, they were marched to Boston, with the design of sending them to England; but most of them desiring to become peaceable residents in America, Congress ordered them to be settled in the interior of Virginia.

24. *What effect did the surrender of Burgoyne produce on the British, Americans, and French?*

The British were very much alarmed; while the Americans were inspired with fresh hopes of success; and the French, in February, 1778, concluded the negotiation, that was set on foot in 1776, by signing treaties of alliance, amity, and commerce, with the Americans.

25. *What were the stipulations of the treaty entered into between France and the United States?*

The French acknowledged the Independence of the United

States. A treaty of alliance was made on the 6th of February, by which it was stipulated that France and the United States should make common cause; and that neither party should make either peace or truce with England without the consent of the other; and neither party lay down its arms, till the independence of the United States was secured. The American commissioners, Franklin, Dean, and Lee, were received at the court of France as the representatives of a sister nation. M. Gerard was appointed minister to the United States. Dr. Franklin, still in France, was, the following September, made Minister Plenipotentiary.

Parliament Proposes Reconciliation, 1778.

26. *What steps were taken by the British Ministry, on receiving intelligence of this treaty?*

They resolved to conciliate America, and accordingly, Commissioners arrived in June, bringing proposals for accommodation.

27. *How were these propositions received by the Americans?*

Congress refused to listen to any terms short of an acknowledgment of Independence.

28. *What was the real object of the Commissioners?*

Their real object was to plot secretly against the Government of the United States, and to seduce influential individuals by direct bribery, and promises of future wealth and titles.

29. *What offer was made to General Reed, of Pennsylvania, and what was his noble reply?*

Fifty thousand dollars, and any office in the Colonies within the King's gift, were offered him if he would aid the Royal cause. His indignant reply was: "I am not worth purchasing; but such as I am, the King of England is not rich enough to buy me."

Anecdote.—A similar proposition was made to General Moultrie, in 1781, by Lord Montague. Moultrie's reply was characteristic of the hero of Fort Sullivan.—"Good God," replied he to Montague, "is it possible that such an idea could arise in the breast of a man of honor?"

The Affairs of 1778.

30. *What change took place in the British army in 1778?*

General Howe returned to England, and General Sir Henry Clinton was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the Royal forces in America.

31. *What did the British commander do?*

He evacuated Philadelphia on the 18th of June, for the purpose of concentrating his forces at New York.

32. *How did he succeed in this, and what steps were taken by Washington to interrupt their advance?*

Washington immediately put his troops in motion, and followed the British army to Monmouth, where a battle was fought, in which the Americans had the advantage; but under cover of the night, Clinton silently decamped, and succeeded in reaching New York, where he remained inactive during the greater part of the summer.

Battle of Monmouth, June 28, 1778.

33. *On what day was the battle of Monmouth fought?*

On Sunday, the 28th of June, 1778. The day was one of intense heat, the thermometer being at 96. Many of the soldiers died of the heat, and the cry for water was more awful than the moans of the wounded.

34. *Of what ill-conduct was Lee guilty?*

At the beginning of the battle, Lee was ordered to advance the column he commanded; instead of doing which, he ordered a retreat, and thus endangered the safety of the whole army. Washington perceiving this, dashed to the head of the retreating division, and in a voice of stern rebuke, demanding of Lee what it meant, exclaimed, "I expect you, sir, to check the enemy immediately." "Your orders," replied Lee, "shall be obeyed; I shall not be the first to leave the field."

35. *What ensued?*

The enemy was checked, but Lee stung with the rebuke,

addressed his commander an insulting letter, for which he was tried by a Court Martial, and suspended from command.

CHAPTER XI.

THE CAMPAIGNS OF 1779 AND 1780.

Operations at the South.

1. *In November, 1778, what force was sent against Savannah, Georgia?*

Colonel Campbell was sent from New York, by General Clinton, with a force of two thousand men for the reduction of Savannah.

2. *When were his forces landed, and what American General opposed him?*

Late in December, 1778, the troops were landed in the vicinity of the city, then defended by General Robert Howe, with six hundred regular troops, and a few hundred militia under his command. This force was wholly inadequate to the defense of the city, and Howe was compelled to surrender after a spirited engagement.

NOTE.—*Robert Howe*, a native of Brunswick, North Carolina; an early and most uncompromising opponent of the British government; for his gallantry in opposing the British at Norfolk, was appointed Brigadier-General, by Congress in 1776; was placed in chief command of the Southern Troops in 1778; was unsuccessful in an expedition against St. Augustine, and in the defense of Savannah; served through the war with great credit to himself, and died, at an advanced age, much respected.

Invasion of South Carolina, 1779.

3. *How was the Campaign of 1779 opened?*

General Prevost, advancing from Florida, captured Sunbury, in Georgia; and taking command of the British army of the

South, consisting of three thousand efficient men, commenced preparations for the invasion of South Carolina.

4. *What measures were taken to oppose him?*

Major-General Lincoln, who had been appointed to the command of the South Carolina troops, established posts and encampments along the banks of the Savannah, on the Carolina side, with the intention of preventing the invasion.

5. *How was the conquest commenced?*

Prevost sent a body of regulars to take possession of Port Royal Island. They were repulsed by a small body of Militia under General Moultrie.

6. *What advantage did the Americans gain?*

Seven hundred Tories, while marching to join the British, were defeated by General Pickens.

7. *What bad effect did these successes have?*

They made the Americans too bold and confident. Lincoln sent General Ashe, with one thousand five hundred men, across the Savannah, intending to confine the British to the sea-coast of Georgia; but Ashe allowed himself to be surprised and defeated at Briar Creek. By this unfortunate occurrence, Lincoln lost one-fourth of his army.

NOTES.—*John Ashe*, born in England in 1721; came to America with his father in 1727, and settled in North Carolina; was an active and zealous patriot on the side of the Americans; served them in many honorable positions; died of the small-pox, at Wilmington, North Carolina, while a prisoner on parole, 1781, aged 60 years.

Benjamin Lincoln, born at Hingham, Massachusetts, 1733; a farmer until, in his 40th year, he joined the army; appointed a Major-General in 1777; was severely wounded at Saratoga; Commander-in-chief of the Southern Troops after Howe, in 1778; unsuccessful at Savannah, October, 1779, and at Charleston the May following; was at the surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown, and was deputed to receive that commander's sword; was shortly afterward elected Secretary of War; and having served his country in many useful and honorable capacities, died in Hingham, 1810, aged 77.

8. *What next occurred?*

While Lincoln was marching to Augusta, to regain the ground thus lost, Prevost, with two thousand chosen men,

crossed the Savannah, 150 miles lower down, and marched for Charleston.

9. *Did Lincoln attempt to prevent his march?*

At first he thought the movement to be a feint, and this occasioned delay; but General Moultrie, with one thousand Militia, threw himself in Prevost's path, and endeavored to retard rather than to stop his progress.

10. *What was the state of affairs at Charleston?*

The city was almost defenseless; but a short delay of Prevost gave time for collecting the neighboring Militia. Lines and abatis were thrown up from river to river on Charleston Neck. Moultrie with his troops arrived at Charleston before Prevost. Consternation reigned within the city, and express after express was dispatched to Lincoln, who was now rapidly marching toward the city.

11. *What occurred on the 10th of May, 1779?*

Prevost crossed the Ashley, and after some slight skirmish ing summoned the city to surrender. General Moultrie answered, "I will save the city." As Lincoln approached, Prevost withdrew to James Island, and finally fled to Savannah.

12. *What was the character of this invasion?*

It was creditable neither to the valor nor the honor of British soldiers. It had many of the features of a predatory excursion of banditti: plantations were devastated, slaves stolen, buckles were torn from the shoes, and rings from the fingers of ladies by the rude soldiery, and the very vaults of the dead were broken open for their treasures.

Operations at the North, 1779.

13. *Where was Washington during the winter of 1778-79?*

He was at Middlebrook, New Jersey, engaged in soothing his suffering and dissatisfied soldiers, and making preparations for the spring campaign. He built two fortifications to

command the Hudson; one at Stony Point, and the other at Verplank's Point. These posts, June 1, 1779, fell into the hands of the British, and greatly annoyed the Americans, till July 16, 1779, when they were recaptured by General Wayne, who for this service received a medal from Congress.

NOTE.—*Antony Wayne*, born in Chester County, Pennsylvania, 1745; a surveyor by profession; joined the army in 1775, and appointed a Brigadier-General in 1776; distinguished for his valor at Brandywine, Germantown, and Monmouth; his highest glory was won in the storming and taking of Stony Point. In 1781, co-operated with Lafayette in Virginia, and after the surrender of Cornwallis, served with great success in Georgia. Died December, 1796, aged 51.

14. *What did General Tryon do in Connecticut?*

Being sent with two thousand five hundred men to burn the American shipping at New Haven, he there destroyed several vessels, and a large quantity of naval stores. He then visited Fairfield, Norwalk, and Greenwich, all of which he reduced to ashes.

15. *What expedition did the Americans undertake?*

General Sullivan, with five thousand men, was sent against the Iroquois Indians, who had massacred many white people at Wyoming and at Cherry Valley. The Indians were defeated, their towns burned, and their provisions destroyed.

Siege of Savannah, October 9, 1779.

16. *What occurred at Savannah on the 1st of September, 1779?*

A French fleet of twenty sail, under Count D'Estaing, appeared off the coast. Sixteen days afterward, Lincoln arrived from Charleston, and D'Estaing summoned the British garrison to surrender. Twenty-four hours were injudiciously allowed for consideration, during which time the British received reinforcements, and preparing for defense, answered accordingly.

NOTE.—*Count D'Estaing*, a native of France; commenced his career in the East Indies, in 1756; was taken prisoner, but escaped by breaking his parole; during the American war served as Vice-Admiral; distinguished himself afterward at the siege of Grenada; and suffered under the guillotine in 1793.

17. *What alternative remained to the besiegers?*

To take the city by storm, or by a regular siege. After a cannonade of four days, D'Estaing resolved to storm the British works, the morning of the 9th of October being chosen for the attack.

18. *How was the attack conducted?*

The French and the Americans advanced against the British works, in three divisions; two feints being made at the same time by the country Militia.

19. *What rendered the attack disadvantageous to the Americans?*

The garrison had received information of the intended attack through a deserter the night before; and the Americans and French, instead of making the assault before day, as was intended, by some miscalculation were delayed till broad daylight, and moved up under a destructive fire.

20. *What was the result?*

The flags of France and South Carolina were planted on the ramparts; but a rally of fresh troops from the garrison swept the assailants from the works. Two thousand men had fallen in the assault; yet Lincoln still hoped. D'Estaing refusing to make another assault, retired to his ships, and Lincoln was compelled to lead his diminished army back to Charleston.

21. *How was Sergeant Jasper killed?*

Seeing his flag falling from the ramparts, he rushed forward and caught it, receiving his death-wound in the act. Count Pulaski also fell in the assault.

NOTE.—*Pulaski* (*Count Casimir*), born in Poland; after brave though unsuccessful efforts to restore his country to independence, was outlawed, and after serving a while in Turkey, came to America in 1777; joined the army under Washington, with the rank of Brigadier-General; did good service at the North, and was ordered to the South, February, 1779, where he was mortally wounded at the siege of Savannah, and died a few days after. Congress voted a monument to his memory; but like most votes of the same kind, the first step has not yet been taken to execute the design.

Paul Jones.

22. *Who was Paul Jones?*

Paul Jones was a Scotchman who, while yet a boy, came over to America, and entered the naval service at the commencement of the Revolution. He was among the first to unfurl the banner of the Republic, and for a long period he alone sustained the glory of his adopted country on the seas. In 1778, he carried terror to the coasts of Scotland and England. Entering the harbor of Whitehaven, he took two forts, and fired the shipping which they protected.

23. *What daring exploit did Paul Jones perform in 1779 off the coast of Scotland?*

After one of the most desperate naval conflicts ever known, he conquered two British ships of war, and carried them to Holland.

The Fall of Charleston, May 12, 1780.

24. *When Sir Henry Clinton heard that Count D'Estaing had sailed from the American coast, what did he do?*

He resolved to subjugate South Carolina; and sailing from New York, with a large land and naval force, he landed on John's Island, thirty miles below Charleston, February 11, 1780.

25. *What was the state of the Province at that period?*

Her finances were in a wretched condition—the people were disheartened by the American failure at Savannah; Indian and Tory foes hung upon her borders, and encouraged the intestine commotion which divided her citizens. Lincoln's army had dwindled to a handful. He was in Charleston when Clinton landed, and was about to fly to the interior, but heard that Clinton was preparing for a regular siege.

26. *What did Lincoln now do?*

Lincoln resolved to defend the city till reinforcements should arrive from the country; and gathering the neighboring Militia, strengthened the fortifications. Clinton invested the city,

March 29, and his fleet crossed the bar under the guns of Fort Moultrie.

27. *What direction did the British fleet pursue?*

The wind favoring, the British fleet passed Fort Moultrie without engagement; but Colonel Thomas Pinckney, who commanded the Fort with three hundred men, kept up a brisk and severe fire on the ships in their passage, by which they were generally damaged, and two hundred and seventeen of their men killed or wounded. The fleet reached an anchorage near Fort Johnson, on James Island, within long shot of the town batteries.

NOTE.—*Thomas Pinckney*, born in Charleston, South Carolina, 1750; was distinguished for his patriotic zeal during the Revolution; appointed aid to Lincoln; served at the siege of Savannah; distinguished himself at the battle of Stono Ferry; with the rank of Major, served as aid to General Gates at the battle of Camden, South Carolina, where he was wounded and made prisoner. In 1787, appointed Governor of South Carolina; was Minister to London; in 1792, a candidate for the Presidency; in 1800, a member of Congress; in 1812, appointed to the command of the Southern Division of the army; and after the war retired into private life. Died, November 2d, 1828, aged 78 years.

28. *Describe the siege.*

The siege lasted about eight weeks. The first parallel being completed, the garrison was summoned to surrender. They refused, and batteries were opened on both sides of the city. Communication with the interior was cut off, and no reinforcements arrived.

29. *What occurred on the 9th of May?*

The garrison a third time refused to surrender, and the British resolved to take it by storm. For two days and nights the foundations of the city were shaken by the incessant thunders of two hundred heavy guns; while the bombs fell like iron rain in the streets. At one time the city was on fire in five different places. The garrison surrendered on the morning of the 12th.

30. *What were the terms of capitulation?*

The garrison were to be allowed some of the honors of war;

the Militia and citizens were to be considered as prisoners or parole; the Continentals and seamen as prisoners. But contrary to the stipulations, Clinton confined many citizens in prison-ships.

31. *Why did no reinforcements arrive from the interior?*

To prevent their doing so, Clinton had detached Lieutenant-Colonel Webster, with one thousand four hundred men to scour the country and cut off communication. They dispersed the American cavalry, and drove back the small bodies of troops, which were approaching to reinforce the city.

32. *Who among the British officers were most active in this service?*

Colonel Tarleton, who became noted for his cruel and sanguinary deeds in South Carolina, and Colonel Ferguson, who was afterward defeated at King's Mountain.

NOTE.—*Banastre Tarleton*, born in Liverpool, England, August, 1754; came to America with Cornwallis; served with that officer in his campaign in this country, where, owing to his sanguinary mode of warfare, he was called the "Bloody Tarleton," and ended his military career at Yorktown, in 1781. On his return to England, was elected to the House of Commons, and in 1817 received the commission of Major-General, but never entered active service. He published a History of the Southern Campaigns of 1780 and 1781.

Partisan Warfare at the South.

33. *After the fall of Charleston, what did the British do?*

Clinton, to secure and extend his conquest, sent out three detachments to overrun the country; one under Cornwallis, toward Camden; another, under Colonel Cruger, toward Ninety-Six; and the third, under Colonel Brown, to Augusta. A truce being proclaimed, and pardon offered to all who would accept British protection—Clinton, thinking the conquest already accomplished, sailed for New York, leaving Cornwallis in command.

34. *What effect did the fall of Charleston produce upon the people of South Carolina?*

For a moment they yielded to despair, but were soon aroused

by the cruelty and outrages of the British. Almost naked and destitute, they flocked to the standards of Sumter, Marion, Pickens, and Clarke, who commenced a desultory and harassing warfare upon the British.

NOTES.—*Andrew Pickens*, born in Pennsylvania in 1739; served as a volunteer in a war against the Cherokee Indians in 1760; during the Revolution was one of the most active of the military partisans of the South; distinguished himself at the battle of Cowpens, and was severely wounded at Eutaw; in 1782, brought to terms the Cherokees; was, after the war, a member of Congress; died at his seat, Pendleton, South Carolina, August, 1817, aged 78 years.

Thomas Sumter, a native of Virginia, was, in 1776, a Lieutenant-Colonel of a regiment of riflemen, and embraced the cause of liberty. After the fall of Charleston, he fled to North Carolina, but soon returned at the head of a little band; routed a British detachment, and was promoted to Brigadier of Militia; distinguished himself at the battle of Rocky Mount and Hanging Rock; after the battle of Camden, was defeated by Tarleton, and his troops dispersed; he retired to North Carolina, but soon took again the field, which he resolutely kept for three months, and successively defeated the British at Wemyss and Blackstock; being wounded severely in this last engagement, he retired for a short time; but early in 1781 was once more engaged in active service, until ill-health compelled him to leave the army; died suddenly at his residence, June, 1832, aged 98 years.

Francis Marion, born in South Carolina, in 1732; in 1759, engaged as a soldier in an expedition against the Cherokee Indians. When the Revolution broke out, became a patriot; was made Captain in the Second South Carolina Regiment at the Siege of Charleston. After the defeat of Gates, Marion being promoted to the rank of Brigadier-General, assembled a little troop of horsemen, renowned as "Marion's Brigade," and at their head sustained a daring and successful partisan warfare at the South. After the battle of Eutaw, took his seat as Senator in the Legislature; but soon again was recalled to the field, and did active service until the close of the War. At the peace, he retired to his plantation, where he died, February, 1795, aged 63 years. His last words were: "Thank God, since I came to man's estate, I never wronged any one."

Read Simms' *Life of Marion*.

35. *What now occurred to arouse the hopes of the people?*

Gates, the conqueror of Burgoyne, was appointed to the command of the Southern army.

36. *How were the partisan leaders engaged at this time?*

They swept over the country in small bands, striking a British detachment here, and a party of Tories there, and in this manner soon checked the tide of invasion. Sumter was on the Catawba, Marion in the swamps of the Pedee, Pickens on the Saluda, and Clarke on the Savannah—each engaged in annoying the British in his vicinity.

Battle of Camden, August 16, 1780.

37. *When Clinton sailed for Carolina, what did Washington do ?*

He dispatched Baron De Kalb with one thousand four hundred Continental troops to the South. When Lincoln was made a prisoner at Charleston, De Kalb, then on his way to South Carolina, became Commander-in-chief of the Southern army, till he was superseded by Gates, who joined him at Deep River, North Carolina, June 6, 1780.

NOTE.—*Baron De Kalb*, a German by birth; served in the French service; at the close of the Seven Years' War came to America as a secret agent of the French government; was arrested, but the suspicions not being confirmed, was released, and returned to France; came to America again, with Lafayette, in 1777; was commissioned by Congress a Major-General; joined immediately the army under Washington, and did good service under him; was afterward in command at Elizabethtown and Amboy, New Jersey; in 1780, was placed at the head of the Maryland Division, and in the battle near Camden, South Carolina, August, 1780, fell, after receiving eleven wounds, while trying to rally the scattered Americans; died three days after. A tree was planted on his grave; and was, although Congress had voted a monument to his memory, the only token of its place until 1825, when the citizens of Camden erected a marble monument to the memory of De Kalb.

38. *What did Gates then do ?*

He marched toward Camden at a very rapid pace, taking the nearest route, though it led through a barren and difficult country.

39. *What was the consequence ?*

When he arrived on the confines of South Carolina, his troops were exhausted with fatigue and suffering, many being almost naked, and all badly armed.

40. *When Gates approached Camden, what did the British do ?*

Cornwallis being in Charleston, Rawdon collected all his available forces at Camden. Soon afterward Cornwallis arrived, and taking command of the British forces, on the night of the 15th of August, he set out to surprise the American camp at Clermont.

NOTE.—*Francis Rawdon*, born in 1754, entered the army in 1771; was present at the battle of Bunker Hill, and at the storming of Forts Clinton and Montgom.

ery, in 1777; in 1778 was appointed Adjutant-General of the British forces in America; assisted at the battle of Monmouth; commanded afterward a distinct corps in South Carolina; successfully opposed General Gates; commanded one wing of the army at the battle of Camden, 1780, and subsequently defeated General Green. A severe illness compelled him to return to England. He was afterward Governor-General of India; and died in 1825, aged 71 years.

41. *What curious coincidence occurred?*

The Americans on the same night, marched forward to attack the British at Camden. Both armies pursuing the same road, met near Sander's Creek, and after a slight skirmish, camped till morning, in sight of each other.

42. *What occurred the next morning, August 16th?*

The battle of Camden. After a desperate struggle, the Americans were compelled to yield to the British bayonets in front, and Tarleton's dragoons on their flanks. The route soon became general, and the Americans lost in killed, wounded, and prisoners, about one thousand men, besides their artillery, ammunition, baggage, and stores. The British lost only three hundred and twenty-five men. Baron De Kalb was among the slain. Gates with a few followers fled to Charlotte, eighty miles distant, having, as General Lee had predicted, "exchanged his northern laurels for southern willows."

43. *What other misfortune occurred to the Americans?*

While Gates's flying army was scattered to the winds, Tarleton surprised Sumter on Fishing Creek, and annihilated his army.

44. *What was now the state of affairs in South Carolina?*

There were no Republicans in arms, except Marion and his men, and the whole country was under the iron rule of military despotism. The oppressive measures of Cornwallis, aroused among the people a spirit of vengeance, which only awaited an opportunity to burst forth.

Battle of King's Mountain, October 7, 1780.

45. *What did Cornwallis do after the battle of Camden?*

Sending out Tarleton to operate on the eastern side of the Catawba, and Major Ferguson to embody the Tories among the mountains, Cornwallis marched to Charlotte.

46. *What did Major Ferguson do ?*

He crossed Broad River, at Cherokee Ford, October 1, 1780, and having increased his detachment to about one thousand five hundred men, he encamped on King's Mountain.

47. *What effect did the march of Ferguson have upon the mountaineers ?*

They were aroused to action, and on the 7th of October, they fell upon Ferguson's camp at King's Mountain. A desperate engagement ensued, in which Ferguson was slain, and his army, after a loss of about three hundred killed and wounded, was entirely routed. With a loss of only twenty men, the Americans took eight hundred prisoners, and one thousand five hundred stand of arms.

48. *Who were the American commanders at King's Mountain ?*

Campbell, Cleveland, Shelby, Sevier, and Williams.

49. *After the victory, what did the Americans do ?*

They hung ten of the captives, who had been notorious for their cruelty to the Americans.

Arnold's Treachery.

50. *How was Washington engaged, while the British were overrunning South Carolina ?*

His army was suffering from want, and consequently no operations of importance could be undertaken. Congress had not the money to supply the soldiers. Bills of credit to the amount of \$200,000,000 had been issued, but they were so depreciated in value, that a pair of boots cost \$600 of the "Continental money."

51. *What was the result of this state of affairs ?*

When a large land and naval force arrived, July 10, at New-

port, Rhode Island, Washington had neither the men nor supplies to co-operate with it.

52. *While the French forces were landing in Rhode Island, what was Clinton doing at New York?*

He was bargaining with Benedict Arnold for West Point, a strong American fort on the banks of the Hudson.

53. *Who was Benedict Arnold?*

He was a Major-General in the American army, a native of Connecticut, who had on many occasions distinguished himself by his bravery. Becoming involved in debt by extravagance and profligacy, he was court-martialed and reprimanded by Washington. Possessing little honor or patriotism, in a spirit of revenge he turned traitor to his country, and opened negotiations with the British for the surrender of the post which he commanded.

54. *What reward did Clinton offer him?*

A brigadier's commission in the British army and \$50,000.

55. *How were his designs discovered and frustrated?*

Major Andre, a British officer, while carrying a communication from Arnold to Clinton, was arrested by three New York Militia men—Paulding, Van Vert, and Williams. After searching him, they found the letter in his boot, and the plot being thus discovered, Arnold escaped to the British, but Andre was hung as a spy. For their services on this occasion, Congress awarded to each of the captors a silver medal, and a pension of \$200 a year.

56. *What became of Arnold afterward?*

After committing some depredations on the coast of his native country, he went to England, where he spent the remainder of his life, detested by those to whom he had sold himself. He had fought bravely for American liberty, but when laurels crowned the brow of the true patriot, Arnold acknowledged with shame, that he could call no man in America his friend.

CHAPTER XII.

CAMPAIGN OF 1781, AND CLOSE OF THE WAR.

Battle of Cowpens, January 17, 1781.

1. *Who was appointed to succeed Gates in the command of the Southern army?*

General Nathaniel Greene.

2. *What did General Greene do?*

He took command of the Southern Division of the American army, at Charlotte, North Carolina, December 3, 1780. Arranging his army in two divisions, he dispatched General Morgan to the relief of Ninety-Six District, which was groaning under the depredations of the Tories, and himself took post at Cheraw, South Carolina.

3. *Where was Cornwallis at this time?*

After the defeat of Ferguson, he had returned to South Carolina, and fixed his head-quarters at Winnsboro'; so that his position was immediately between the two divisions of the American army. Cornwallis was about to march into North Carolina, when this disposition was made by Greene. Unwilling to leave Morgan in his rear, he sent Tarleton to disperse or capture the detachment under Morgan's command.

4. *What then occurred?*

Morgan retreated until he reached the Cowpens, where, being overtaken by Tarleton, a battle occurred, January 17, 1781, in which the British were defeated with a loss of three hundred men killed and wounded. The Americans took five hundred prisoners, and a large quantity of ammunition, and stores. Tarleton, though closely pursued by Colonel Washington, escaped, after receiving a slight wound in his hand, from the sword of his pursuer.

5. *What amusing story is told of Tarleton?*

Some time after the battle of Cowpens, he said sneeringly to

Mrs. Willie Jones, a witty American lady, "Colonel Washington, I am told, is illiterate, and can scarcely write his own name." "Ah, Colonel," said the lady, "but you bear evidence that he can *make his mark*." Tarleton said he should like to see this Colonel Washington. Mrs. Jones' sister instantly replied, "Had you *looked behind* you at the *Cowpens*, you might have had that pleasure."

Battle of Guilford Court House, March 15, 1781.

6. *What occurred after the battle of Cowpens?*

Morgan retreated into North Carolina, where he was joined by Greene with the other division of the army. To the confines of Virginia they were pursued by Cornwallis, who then returned to Hillsborough. There he raised the Royal standard and called upon the Tories to join him.

7. *What did Greene do after he had refreshed and strengthened his army in Virginia?*

He marched back into North Carolina with about five thousand men. Feeling strong enough to contend with Cornwallis, he sought an engagement with him.

8. *What was the result?*

The armies met, March 15, 1781, at Guilford Court House. A battle ensued, and though Cornwallis kept the field, another such victory would have ruined his army. A few days after, he fled with his shattered battalions to Wilmington, North Carolina, pursued as far as Deep River by General Greene, who then changed his direction and marched into South Carolina.

Battle of Hobkirk Hill, April 25th, 1781.

9. *Whom did Cornwallis leave in command of his forces at Camden?*

Lord Rawdon, who, upon the arrival of Greene, attacked his camp at Hobkirk Hill, April 25, 1781. Greene was forced to retreat, though the loss on each side was nearly equal.

Operations in South Carolina, 1781.

10. *After the battle of Guilford Court House, what did Greene do?*

He marched toward Camden, South Carolina, and encamped, April 19, 1781, at Hobkirk Hill, within one mile of Rawdon's entrenchments. On the 25th he was attacked by Rawdon, and compelled to retreat. Soon afterward he marched against the the British posts at Ninety-Six.

11. *What did Rawdon do?*

Alarmed at the rapid accessions which the Americans were receiving, he set fire to Camden and retreated to Nelson's Ferry.

12. *What posts fell into the hands of the Americans in the month of May?*

Orangeburg, Fort Watson, Fort Motte, and Nelson's Ferry.

Anecdote.—When compelled by painful duty, Colonel Lee informed Mrs. Motte, "that in order to accomplish the immediate surrender of the British garrison, which occupied her elegant mansion, its destruction was indispensable"—she instantly replied: "The sacrifice of my property is nothing, and I shall view its destruction with delight, if it shall in any degree contribute to the good of my country." In proof of her sincerity, she at once presented the arrows by which combustible matter was to be conveyed to the building.

13. *What posts did the British still retain in South Carolina?*

Charleston and Ninety-Six.

14. *Did Greene take Ninety-Six?*

He did not. After an ineffectual siege of one month's duration he was compelled to retreat by the approach of Rawdon, who pursued him across the Saluda, and then took post on the Congaree, where, two days afterward, he was astonished to find Greene before him, with his army so recruited, that he was willing to hazard a battle.

15. *What then occurred*

Rawdon fled to Orangeburg, and leaving the army in command of Colonel Stewart, soon afterward sailed for England.

16. *Where did Greene take post during the sickly season?*
On the High Hills of Santee.

Battle of Eutaw Springs, September 8, 1781.

17. *What did Greene do in August?*

Being reinforced by some troops from North Carolina, he crossed the Wateree and Congaree rivers, and marched upon Orangeburg.

18. *To what place did Stewart then retreat?*

Stewart then retreated to Eutaw Springs, where he awaited the approach of the Americans. On the morning of the 8th of September a battle commenced, in which the Americans, after driving the British from the field, broke their ranks to plunder the British encampment. At this moment, the British renewed the combat, and thus taken at disadvantage, the Americans were compelled to retreat. During the night, however, the British fled to Charleston, and Greene took possession of the field.

19. *What commanders distinguished themselves in driving the British into Charleston and Savannah?*

Marion, Sumter, Lee, Pickens, Clarke and others. By the end of the year, the British in the South were entirely confined to those two cities.

Surrender of Lord Cornwallis, October 19, 1781.

20. *How was Cornwallis engaged during this period?*

He left Wilmington, April 25, 1781, and proceeding to Petersburg, increased his army, by adding to it some British troops stationed there. He then commenced a desultory war upon the Virginians, which he continued till June, when he received orders from Clinton to take post near the sea.

21. *What did Cornwallis now do?*

Marching to Yorktown, he commenced fortifying that place, and Gloucester Point, on the opposite bank of York river.

22. *What did Washington do when he heard that Cornwallis had collected an army in Virginia?*

He had already been joined on the Hudson by the French forces; and had concerted with Rochambeau, a plan for combined operations. The point of attack had not been finally determined; but now Washington resolved to concentrate his forces against Cornwallis.

23. *How did Washington conceal his designs from Clinton?*

He wrote deceptive letters to General Greene, and sent them so as to be intercepted by the British.

24. *What was the result?*

The project was so successful, that Washington had crossed the Hudson, and passed through New Jersey, before Clinton was aware of his design.

25. *Did Clinton send reinforcements to Cornwallis?*

He attempted to do so, but was prevented by Count De Grasse, who had in the meantime arrived off the coast with a French fleet of twenty-four ships of the line.

26. *What occurred on the 28th of September, 1781?*

Washington having been joined, on his march, by Lafayette, with a considerable body of troops, arrived before Yorktown, and driving the British from their outworks, commenced a regular siege.

27. *What progress did the Americans make?*

After withstanding a siege of three weeks, Cornwallis was compelled to surrender on the 19th of October, 1781. Seven thousand prisoners exclusive of seamen, fell into the hands of the Americans.

28. *Was this victory important?*

The destruction of the army of Cornwallis decided the Revolution in favor of the Americans. Liberty had been won! America was free!

29. *How was the news of this victory received throughout the United States?*

The news arrived in Philadelphia in the dead hours of the night. A watchman in the streets cried, "Twelve o'clock and a cloudy morning—CORNWALLIS IS TAKEN!" The effect was electrical. All but the dead in the graves awoke at the glad sound, and the exulting people filled the streets. The news was received in every city, town, and village. As the thunders of war died away, the echoes mingled with a shout of thanksgiving to the God of battles, who had crowned the struggles of the patriots with success.

Treaty of Peace, at Paris, September 3, 1783. •

30. *What effect did the surrender of Cornwallis have in England?*

All hopes of conquering America were abandoned. The peace party in Parliament gained the ascendancy, and Lord North, who for twelve years had misled the nation, was compelled to resign.

31. *What was done toward the establishment of peace?*

Five commissioners were appointed by the United States to conclude a treaty of peace with Great Britain. These were John Adams, John Jay, Dr. Franklin, Thomas Jefferson, and Henry Laurens. Jefferson did not serve.

32. *What was the result of their negotiation?*

They met two English commissioners at Paris, November 30, 1782, and there signed a preliminary treaty of peace. The French and English commissioners also signed a treaty of peace on the 20th of January following.

33. *When was a definitive treaty signed, and where?*

On the 3d of September, 1783, a definitive Treaty of Peace was signed at Paris. At the same time a similar treaty between England, France, Spain, and Holland, was signed by their respective commissioners, and the United States became an acknowledged power among the nations of the earth.

34. *When had a final cessation of hostilities been proclaimed?*

On the 19th of April, 1783, just eight years after the battle of Lexington.

35. *When did the British respectively evacuate Savannah, New York, and Charleston?*

They evacuated Savannah, July 11, 1782; Charleston, December 14th of the same year; and New York, November 25th, 1783.

The Army Disbanded.

36. *When the war was over, what new and serious difficulty presented itself?*

The depreciated currency, in which the troops had been paid, led to much suffering and dissatisfaction among them. Even the officers, alarmed at the prospect of being dismissed without a settlement, joined in the agitation, and affairs began to assume an alarming aspect.

37. *What did Washington do?*

He assembled the dissatisfied officers and exhorted them to moderation; promising to exert all his own influence in their favor.

38. *What effect did this have?*

Coming from one whom they loved and respected, the words of Washington were decisive; the officers voted him an address of thanks, and resolved to trust to the generosity of their country.

39. *What did Congress do?*

Congress had little money, and no effectual means of raising more; but it was agreed that each officer should have five years additional pay, and eighty dollars besides his regular dues.

40. *What was then done?*

Washington having appointed the 3d of November for disbanding the army, took an affectionate leave of his officers and

soldiers; and proceeding to Annapolis, where Congress was in session, resigned the commission which for eight years he had held with so much honor.

Expenses of the War.

41. *During the war, how many had borne arms on the part of the Americans?*

The Continental army, enlisted during the war, was two hundred and thirty-one thousand. The militia about fifty-six thousand.

42. *Of this entire number, how many were surviving in 1854?*
Not quite one thousand.

43. *What was the number of the British army that served in America?*

About one hundred and twelve thousand five hundred land troops and twenty-two thousand seamen. Of these not one is known to be now living.

44. *What was the estimated cost of the war to Great Britain?*
Over \$500,000,000.

45. *What was the cost of the war to the United States?*

Over \$130,000,000; besides vast sums lost by individuals in the respective States. South Carolina alone, during the war, lost twenty-five thousand negroes, carried off by the enemy.

46. *During the war, how many men were lost by Americans and British respectively?*

The British are estimated to have lost in battle, and by diseases of the army, fifty thousand men; the Americans, from the same causes, about an equal number.

CHAPTER XIII

ORGANIZATION OF THE GOVERNMENT.

The Confederation.

1. *In the infancy of the Colonies, what had called the people together in Conventions?*

The fear of Indian depredations often called the people together in Conventions. There was, first, the Colonial Assembly of the New England States, in 1643. A second Colonial Convention, in 1765; the First Continental Congress, in 1774, and the Second Continental Congress, in 1775. From this latter Congress, sprung the Articles of Confederation.

2. *What is our present Constitution the result of?*

Our present Constitution is the result of a long course of gradual improvements, suggested by the necessity of the case.

3. *What difficulties did the Continental Congress experience?*

It experienced great difficulties, from a want of sufficient power to enforce such measures as were necessary for the safety and defense of the country.

4. *What was done to remedy this evil?*

A committee was appointed, immediately after the Declaration of Independence, to prepare Articles of Confederation, to be entered into by the several Colonies. The report of this committee was adopted on the 17th of November, 1777. Eleven of the States adopted the Articles in 1779; the thirteenth and last State, in 1781.

5. *When did the Articles of the Confederation become binding?*

All the States having ratified the Articles of Confederation, a confederacy was formed under the name of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, and the Government went into operation on the 23d of March, 1781.

6. *What were the objections to the Articles of Confederation?*

The bond of union was too feeble; the Congress of the Confederation acted under the power and authority of State Legislatures only; and the government was found too weak and inefficient for the wants of the country.

Formation of the Constitution, 1787.

7. *What led to the formation of the present Constitution?*

The "Articles of Confederation," which had been in force during the war, gave Congress but little power. A large public debt had been contracted, and no provision could be made for its payment. This made a more efficient General Government necessary.

8. *What was done in 1786?*

In accordance with a proposition of the Legislature of Virginia, commissioners from the several States met at Annapolis, and made arrangements for the appointments of delegates, with more ample powers, to meet at Philadelphia.

9. *When did these delegates meet, and what did they do?*

They met in May, 1787, and selected Washington, who was a delegate from Virginia, for their president. After four months' deliberations, the Federal Constitution was adopted on the 17th of September.

10. *What was next done?*

Being submitted to Congress, the Constitution was by that body transmitted to the several States for their consideration. In 1788, it was ratified by eleven of the States, and thenceforth became the Constitution of the United States.

 Study Analysis of the Constitution, in Appendix to this work.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE NAVY DURING THE REVOLUTION ; MANNERS, RELIGION, TRADE AND COMMERCE, POPULATION, EDUCATION ; REFLECTIONS.

The Navy.

1. *Had the United States any Navy at the beginning of the Revolution?*

No ; but no sooner had the struggle for Independence commenced, than plans were suggested for the organization of a navy.

2. *What Colonies had provided vessels of war, before any action of Congress?*

Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut had each provided two vessels, fitted, armed, and equipped.

3. *In what year did Congress authorize a regular Marine?*

In 1775, Congress ordered vessels to be built in the four Colonies of New England, New York, Pennsylvania, and Virginia.

4. *What were the classes, number, and names of the vessels ordered to be built?*

Five ships, of thirty-two guns each, viz. : the Washington of Pennsylvania, the Raleigh of New Hampshire, the Hancock of Massachusetts, the Randolph of Pennsylvania, and the Warren of Rhode Island. Five ships, of twenty-eight guns each, viz. : the Maryland of Virginia, the Trumbull of Connecticut, the Effingham of Pennsylvania, the Congress of New York, and the Providence of Rhode Island ; and three ships of twenty-four guns each—the Boston of Massachusetts, the Montgomery of New York, and the Delaware of Pennsylvania.

5. *What became of these ships?*

For want of funds, but more for want of materials, to equip

them, such as guns, anchors, rigging, &c., few of them ever got to sea in the service for which they were built. The Congress and the Montgomery were burnt on the Hudson, to prevent their falling into the hands of the British. The Washington and Effingham were burnt by the British themselves; and the Delaware was taken at the capture of Philadelphia.

6. *Who was Commander-in-chief of the Navy?*

Ezekiel Hopkins, usually called Commodore Hopkins. His pay was one hundred and twenty-five dollars per month. Twenty-four naval officers were appointed under him, with the title of captain.

7. *Describe the flags used in the Navy.*

The flags used on board of some of the ships bore a device representing a pine tree, with a rattlesnake coiled at the root, and ready to strike—The motto, "*Don't tread on me.*" Other vessels adopted the name of the Colony from which they sailed. In 1777, Congress adopted our present national colors.

8. *Name some of the naval officers who gained reputation during the contest for Independence.*

Commodore Hopkins, Captains Manly, Mugford, Jones, Barry, Barney, Waters, Young, Tucker, Talbot, and Nicholson. The commanders-in-chief who succeeded Hopkins were Biddle, Robinson, Wickes, Rathburne, and Hacket.

NOTE.—Read interesting notices of these in Cooper's "*History of the American Navy*," and in Lossing's "*Field-Book of the Revolution*."

9. *What is said of the commanders of privateers?*

Many of them were distinguished for nautical skill. Their achievements upon the ocean were numerous, and almost always successful; and it is estimated that during the war they captured no less than twelve hundred and ninety-seven British vessels, not including those taken by the public ships.

10. *Of the public ships, what spirited actions can you mention?*

Spirited actions occurred between the Randolph and Yarmouth, the Raleigh and Druid, the Trumbull and Watt, the Congress and Savage, &c. But of all the naval engagements that occurred during the war, that between the Bonhomme Richard, commanded by Paul Jones, of forty guns, and the Serapis of forty-four guns, was the most remarkable.

Manners.

11. *What does Dr. Ramsay write of the manners of the Americans immediately after the Revolution?*

"On the whole," says he, "the literary, political, and military talents of the United States have been improved by the Revolution; but their moral character is inferior to what it was formerly. So great is the change for the worse, that the friends of public order are loudly called upon to exert their utmost abilities in extirpating the vicious principles and habits which have taken deep root during the late convulsions."

Religion.

12. *What effects had the war upon local prejudices and religious controversies?*

The different Congresses and Conventions brought men together of various and discordant sentiments; frequent intercourse between different parts of the country was promoted by the shifting of armies; local prejudices and sectarian asperities were obliterated; religious controversy was suspended, and bigotry softened. Protestant and Catholic, Jew and Gentile, believer and disbeliever, found that they could fight in unison for one cause, and saw no reason why they might not live in harmony with each other after their common victory had been won. If piety was not generally promoted, religious intolerance was certainly subdued.

13. *Was religious liberty as yet established in all the States?*
No; although the new Constitution provided that "Congress

should make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof," yet many of the States still retained, in their constitutions or laws, disqualifying clauses. In many of the Northern, Middle, and Southern States, Roman Catholics and Jews were excluded from office, and other disqualifications were imposed on account of religious belief. Fortunately for our country, these clouds of prejudice have been dispersed; and wherever the Sun of Righteousness makes his appearance, He requires no human means to render brighter the rays of his glory.

Trade and Commerce.

14. *What was the effect of the war upon Commerce?*

During its existence, our commerce was interrupted not only with Great Britain, but, in a large measure, with the rest of the world. The greater part of our shipping was destroyed by the enemy, or decayed from want of use.

Agriculture and Manufactures.

15. *How was it with Agriculture?*

Agriculture was greatly interrupted; many a farmer converted his plowshare into the sword; and so distracted was labor of every kind, that little was done to advance the productions of the soil or the workshop.

Population.

16. *What is said of the increase of population during the Revolution?*

The increase was very small; few if any immigrants arrived in the country. Many of the inhabitants were slain in battle, and thousands of them, adhering to the British cause, left the country; and, at the close of the war, the population of all the United States was not over three millions of inhabitants.

Education.

17. *What is said of education?*

The interests of education greatly suffered. In most of the schools and colleges, the course of instruction was for a season suspended. Students exchanged the hall for the camp; and even ministers and professors threw aside the gown, and assumed the sword and epaulet. At the close of the war, only twenty or twenty-five colleges and academies were in session.

Reflections.

18. *What very just reflections have been made on the American Revolution?*

"It is doubtless the most interesting event in the pages of modern history. Changes equally great, and convulsions equally violent, have often taken place; and the history of man tells us of many incidents in which oppression, urged beyond endurance, has called forth the spirit of successful and triumphant resistance. But in the American Revolution we see feeble Colonies, without an army, without a navy, without an established government, without a revenue, without munitions of war, without fortifications, boldly stepping forth to meet the armies of a proud, powerful, and vindictive enemy. We see these Colonies, amidst want, poverty, and misfortune, supported by the pervading spirit of liberty, and guided by the good hand of Heaven, for nearly eight years sustaining the weight of a cruel conflict upon their own soil. We behold them, at length, victorious; their enemies sullenly retiring from our shores, and these humble Colonies standing forth, enrolled in the page of history—*free, sovereign, and independent States*. Nor is this all. We see a wise government springing up from the blood that was spilt, and promising to shed the choicest political blessings upon millions yet unborn."

CHAPTER XV.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION—1789-1797.

Officers of Government.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, VIRGINIA, FIRST PRESIDENT.

Born, February 22d, 1732; Died, December 14, 1799, aged 67.

Inaugurated at New York, April 30, 1789; retired, March 3d, 1797.

JOHN ADAMS, MASSACHUSETTS, VICE-PRESIDENT.

Secretaries of State—Thomas Jefferson, Virginia; Edmund Randolph, Virginia; Timothy Pickering, Massachusetts.

Secretaries of Treasury—Alexander Hamilton, New York; Oliver Wolcott, New York.

Secretaries of War—Henry Knox, Massachusetts; Timothy Pickering, Massachusetts; James McHenry, Maryland.

Post-Masters General—Samuel Osgood, Massachusetts; Timothy Pickering, Pennsylvania; Joseph Habersham, Georgia.

Attorneys-General—Edmund Randolph, Virginia; William Bradford, Pennsylvania; Charles Lee, Virginia.

Election of the First President.

1. *What occurred on the 4th of March, 1789.*

The session of the Continental Congress having expired, the new government went into operation. In the election of the first President, January, 1789, only *ten* States voted. North Carolina and Rhode Island had not as yet signed the new Constitution, and New York had failed to choose electors. The whole number of electoral votes given by the ten States was sixty-nine for Washington. John Adams received thirty-four votes; which, being the next highest vote, made him Vice-President.

2. *How did the people testify their love for Washington, while he was on his way to New York, then the seat of government?*

Congratulatory addresses were presented to him by bodies

of citizens, who hailed him as "the father of his country;" and triumphal arches were erected to commemorate his achievements. At Trenton, maidens strewed flowers in his pathway; and at Philadelphia a civic crown was placed upon his head.

3. *What occurred on his arrival at New York?*

On the 30th of April the ceremony of inauguration was performed, in the presence of a multitude of spectators, in the gallery of the City Hall.

4. *How was Congress chiefly employed during its first session?*

In forming and establishing the various departments of the government.

5. *What beneficial effects resulted from the establishment of the new government?*

Public confidence was restored, Commerce revived, the General Government assumed the debts which the States had incurred during the war, and the United States suddenly rose, from embarrassment and depression, to a high state of national prosperity.

Indian War of 1790-5.

6. *What war occurred in 1790?*

The country was involved in a sanguinary war with the Indians north of the Ohio. These obtained a victory over General Harmer, and another, during the following year, over General St. Clair.

7. *Who was appointed to succeed St. Clair in military command?*

General Wayne, who conquered the Indians, and negotiated a treaty with them at Fort Greenville, on the western branch of the Miami, in 1795.

Difficulties with France.

8. *In what new difficulties were the United States now involved?*

The French Revolution had commenced in Europe, and the Directory claimed the aid of the United States in carrying on hostilities against England. The sympathies of a large portion of the people were with France, and the country became divided into two parties.

9. *What was the policy of Washington's administration?*

It was the policy of Washington's administration to remain neutral. It was true that France had aided the Colonies in their struggle for independence; but it was only through motives of policy, being herself at war with England. Washington saw no reason why Americans should endanger their liberties, by involving themselves in controversies which had upturned the stablest governments of the Old World.

10. *Who was the French minister to the United States, and what did he do?*

M. Genet, who arrived at Charleston in April, 1793, and attempted immediately to take advantage of the sympathies of the people, and engage them in a war, despite the efforts of Washington to the contrary. At the request of Washington, Genet was recalled; and the French Government condemned his conduct.

Jay's Treaty.

11. *What produced animosity between the governments of Great Britain and the United States?*

Each accused the other of infractions of the treaty of 1783. To avert a rupture between them, John Jay was appointed Envoy-Extraordinary to the British Court, to adjust all matters in dispute.

12. *Of what did the Americans complain?*

That no indemnification had been made for their negroes, carried away at the close of the Revolution; that the British held military posts on their frontiers, contrary to the treaty; that British emissaries had excited the hostility of the Indians; and that, to retaliate on France, the English had captured our neutral vessels and impressed our seamen into the British service.

13. *Of what did the British complain?*

That the stipulations concerning the property of Loyalists, and also in relation to debts contracted in England before the war, had not been complied with.

4. *Did Mr. Jay negotiate a Treaty?*

He did negotiate a Treaty, which settled many of the disputed points between the two nations; but as no redress was obtained for negroes carried away from the South, and as there were other features in the Treaty distasteful to the North, though ratified by Congress, it was most unsatisfactorily received by the people. In several cities mobs threatened violence to its supporters; in New York, Mr. Jay was burned in effigy; Mr. Hamilton, in attempting to defend the measure, was stoned; and, in Philadelphia, the British Minister was publicly insulted.

The Whisky Insurrection, 1791.

15. *What very unpopular law was passed by Congress in 1791, and what was the result?*

A law imposing duties on distilled liquors was resisted by the inhabitants of Western Pennsylvania. Washington, after publishing two ineffectual proclamations, sent a body of militia under General Henry Lee to enforce obedience. This argument was effectual.

Parties in the United States.

16. *When Washington's first term of office expired, was he re-elected?*

Yes, by a large majority.

17. *What disputes arose, during the second session of Congress, which laid the foundation of parties in the United States?*

Disputes arose concerning the government, which not only divided the people and Congress, but even Washington's cabinet. Jefferson, the Secretary of State, became the head of the Republican party, and Hamilton, the Secretary of the Treasury, took a similar position with the Federalists.

18. *What were the respective doctrines of these parties?*

The Federalists favored the concentration of a controlling power in the Federal government; the Republican party was for granting only such powers as were specified, and for reserving all others to the States.

19. *What new States were admitted into the Union in Washington's administration?*

Vermont, in February, 1791; Kentucky, in 1792; and Tennessee, in 1796. These made the number of States sixteen.

20. *In what condition did Washington leave the country, when his second term of office expired?*

All disputes with foreign nations, except France, had been adjusted; government credit was established; commerce had wonderfully expanded, and the government was highly prosperous.

21. *What great struggle signalized the last year of Washington's administration?*

The Federalists nominated John Adams; and the Republicans, Thomas Jefferson, for the Presidency. The contest was fierce, and resulted in the election of Adams for President, and Jefferson for Vice-President. It was a victory for both parties.

22. *What did Washington do in September, 1796?*

He issued his Farewell Address to the people of the United

States, a document full of wise advice and wholesome patriotism. He soon afterward retired to Mount Vernon, and there spent the remainder of his life.

CHAPTER XVI.

JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION—1797-1801.

Officers of Government.

JOHN ADAMS, MASSACHUSETTS, SECOND PRESIDENT.

Born, October 19th, 1735; died, 4th July, 1826, aged 90.

Inaugurated, Philadelphia, March 4th, 1797; retired, March 3d, 1801

THOMAS JEFFERSON, VIRGINIA, VICE-PRESIDENT.

Secretaries of State—Timothy Pickering, Massachusetts; John Marshall, Virginia.

Secretaries of Treasury—Oliver Wolcott, Connecticut; Samuel Dexter, Massachusetts.

Secretaries of War—James McHenry, Maryland; Samuel Dexter, Massachusetts; Roger Griswold, Connecticut.

Secretary of Navy—Benjamin Stoddard, Maryland.

Post-Master General—Joseph Habersham, Georgia.

Attorney-General—Charles Lee, Virginia.

Events of the Administration.

1. *How had Adams merited the office of President?*

He had taken an active part in the Revolutionary movement. As a delegate from Massachusetts, he had signed the Declaration of Independence, and had been for many years a representative of the United States in Europe.

2. *How did he commence his administration?*

He adopted the cabinet council left by Washington as his

own. and resolved to pursue the general policy of his illustrious predecessor.

Difficulties with France.

3. *What subject received the earliest attention of the new administration?*

The unpleasant relations existing between France and the United States.

4. *When the revolutionary government of France failed to entice the United States into European quarrels, what did it do?*

It pursued a course of insult and aggression toward them, which ended in open hostilities.

5. *How did the American government then act?*

Measures of defense and retaliation were adopted, the navy was increased, and a provisional army was raised, of which General Washington was appointed commander-in-chief.

6. *What naval engagement took place?*

The United States frigate *Constellation* captured the French frigate *L'Insurgent*, in February, 1799. This frigate had previously taken the American schooner *Retaliation*. On the 1st of February, 1800, the *Constellation* had an action with the French frigate *La Vengeance*, but escaped capture, after a loss of one hundred and sixty men killed and wounded.

7. *What followed?*

A few months afterward the French Directory was overthrown, and the disputes between the two countries were amicably adjusted by a treaty of peace, September 30, 1800.

8. *Who was sent to France, July, 1797, to adjust difficulties?*

C. C. Pinckney, Elbridge Gerry, and John Marshall were sent.

9. *How were they received?*

They were denied an audience to the French Directory, unless

they would first pay a large sum of money into the French treasury.

10. *To this demand, what was Pinckney's indignant reply?*

"America will pay millions for defense; not one cent for tribute."

Death of Washington, 1799

11. *What event occurred on the 14th of December, 1799, which threw a gloom over the whole country?*

Washington died suddenly, at Mount Vernon, in the 68th year of his age.

12. *How did the people testify their grief?*

In accordance with a recommendation of Congress, crape was worn on the left arm for thirty days; eulogies were delivered, and funeral processions celebrated throughout the country, which exhibited the affecting and sublime spectacle of a nation mourning for one, whom they had been accustomed to regard as the father of his country.

NOTE.—The following beautiful Epitaph, discovered on the back of a portrait of Washington, sent to the family from England, deserves to be remembered:

Epitaph.

WASHINGTON,
The Defender of his Country—the Founder of Liberty,
THE FRIEND OF MAN.
History and Tradition are explored in vain for a parallel to his
Character.
In the Annals of Modern Greatness he stands alone,
And the noblest names of Antiquity
Lose their lustre in his presence.
BORN THE BENEFactor OF MANKIND,
He united all the Greatness necessary to an Illustrious Career.
Nature made him Great;
He made himself Virtuous.
Called by his Country to the defense of her Liberties,
He triumphantly Vindicated the Rights of Humanity,
And on the pillars of National Independence.
Laid the foundation of a great reform.
Twice invested with Supreme Magistracy
By the unanimous voice of a Free People,
He surpassed in the Cabinet the glories of the Field,
And voluntarily resigning the Sceptre and the Sword, retired to
The shades of private life.
A spectacle so new and sublime
Was contemplated with the profoundest admiration;

And the name of WASHINGTON,
 Adding new lustre to Humanity,
 Resounded to the remotest regions of the Earth
 MAGNANIMOUS IN YOUTH,
 GLORIOUS THROUGH LIFE;
 GREAT IN DEATH;
 His highest ambition, the happiness of Mankind;
 His noblest Victory, the Conquest of himself.
 Bequeathing to Posterity the inheritance of his Fame,
 And building his Monument in the hearts of his Countrymen,
 He lived the ornament of the 18th century,
 AND DIED REGRETTED BY A MOURNING WORLD.

CHAPTER XVII.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION—1801–1809.

Officers of Government.

THOMAS JEFFERSON, VIRGINIA, THIRD PRESIDENT.

Born, April 2d, 1743; Died, July 4th, 1826, aged 83.

Inaugurated at Washington, March 4th, 1801; Retired, March 3d, 1809.

VICE-PRESIDENTS—AARON BURR, NEW YORK, 1801–1805; GEORGE CLINTON, NEW YORK, 1805–1809.

Secretary of State—James Madison, Virginia.

Secretaries of Treasury—Samuel Dexter, Massachusetts; Albert Gallatin, Pennsylvania.

Secretary of War—Henry Dearborn, Massachusetts.

Secretaries of Navy—Benjamin Stoddard, Maryland; Robert Smith, Maryland.

Post-Masters General—Joseph Habersham, Georgia; Gideon Granger, Connecticut.

Attorneys-General—Levi Lincoln, Massachusetts; John Breckenridge, Kentucky; Cæsar A. Rodney, Delaware.

Removal of the Seat of Government, 1800.

1. *By what event was the year 1800 marked?*

The year 1800 was marked by the removal of the seat of

government from Philadelphia to the city of Washington, situated on the Maryland side of the Potomac.

2. *Who succeeded John Adams as President?*

Thomas Jefferson, on March 4th, 1801.

3. *What changes followed the accession of Jefferson?*

On the election of Mr. Jefferson to the Presidency, the principal offices of government were transferred to the Democratic or Republican party, of which he was the leader. The system of internal duties was abolished; the army and navy were reduced to a moderate peace establishment; and several unpopular laws, which had been passed during the previous administration, were repealed.

Purchase of Louisiana, 1803.

4. *What additions were made to the States shortly after the accession of Mr. Jefferson?*

In 1802, Ohio, which had previously formed a part of the North-Western Territory, was erected into a State, and admitted into the Union; and in the year following, 1803, the territory of Louisiana was purchased from France, for the sum of \$15,000,000

5. *What is said of the purchase of Louisiana?*

The purchase of that territory by the United States became necessary in order to secure the unrestricted navigation of the Mississippi River, the outlet of which was in the possession of the Spanish authorities. The acquisition of this tract has been justly considered the most important measure of Mr. Jefferson's administration.

Troubles with the Barbary States.

6. *What was the next subject which engaged the attention of the President?*

The next subject which arrested the attention of the Presi-

dent, was the insolent demands of the Barbary Powers for tribute, and their unprovoked attacks upon our commerce in the Mediterranean Sea.

7. *What occurred in June, 1801?*

In the month of June, 1801, no less than five American vessels were captured by the Tripolitan cruisers, while only one of their ships-of-war was captured by the Americans.

8. *What armament was accordingly sent by the United States to the scene of hostilities?*

During the same year, a squadron, under Commodore Dale, consisting of *three* frigates and a sloop-of-war, was sent to the Mediterranean. By these, the port of Tripoli was placed under strict blockade.

9. *What happened in 1803?*

In 1803, the government of the United States, having determined to put an end to this war, sent out a large squadron, under the supervision of Commodore Preble.

10. *What happened on the cruise?*

While cruising in the harbor of Tripoli, the frigate Philadelphia ran aground, and falling into the hands of the enemy, with her officers and crew, was captured by a fleet of Tripolitan gun-boats.

Brilliant Action of Decatur, February 3d, 1804.

11. *Describe the brilliant action which ensued.*

After this disaster, Lieutenant Decatur proposed to his commander to retake or destroy the frigate. Receiving permission to do so, with a small armed schooner and seventy men, he accomplished the daring exploit of burning the frigate under the guns of the enemy's batteries, and made good his retreat, having but four men wounded in the engagement.

12. *How was Decatur rewarded?*

For his signal daring and skill, in so perilous an enterprise.

Decatur was immediately promoted to the office of Post-Captain.

13. *By what was this succeeded?*

This brilliant achievement was succeeded by another of a romantic character. It was now determined to unite a land expedition with the operations of the naval forces, and the singular spectacle was thus exhibited of the invasion of an African State by an American force.

Capture of Derne by General Eaton, April 27th, 1805.

14. *To whom was the command of this expedition entrusted?*

The command of this expedition was given to General William Eaton, who succeeded in forming an alliance with Hamet, the lawful, but exiled bashaw of Tripoli.

15. *Describe General Eaton's movements.*

Having met Hamet in Egypt, where he held command of an army of Mamelukes, he united his forces with those of his ally, and marched from Alexandria on the 6th of March, 1805, with a mixed force of Tripolitans, Egyptians, and seventy American seamen.

16. *What of his march?*

His march was over a thousand miles of desert waste. After suffering intensely from heat, want of water, and the drifting sands, he finally reached the city of Derne, on the 25th of April, 1805.

17. *What was his success?*

On the 27th, the combined forces of Eaton and Hamet appeared in battle array before the walls of the Tripolitan city, and after a desperate contest of two hours and a half, Derne was carried at the point of the bayonet. The next exploit was the successful resistance of a siege by the army of the Bashaw, who had advanced to recapture the city.

18. *What arrested Eaton's career?*

While thus successfully engaged, Eaton's career of victory was cut short by the arrival of the frigate *Constitution* in the harbor of Derne, with the news of a treaty of peace, on terms much less advantageous than Eaton might have dictated, if left to himself.

19. *What were the terms of the treaty?*

The terms of the treaty entered into were, that the American prisoners should be ransomed for the sum of \$60,000, and that the enterprise should be immediately abandoned.

20. *What is said of this treaty?*

This treaty was by no means acceptable to the American people, who have always had an insuperable objection to purchasing peace with gold.

21. *What happened in 1804?*

In the year 1804, a new election had given the office of President to Mr. Jefferson a second time. George Clinton, of New York, was elected Vice-President, in the place of Colonel Burr.

Duel of Burr and Hamilton, July 12th, 1804.

22. *What sad event took place during the month of July?*

The duel between General Alexander Hamilton and Colonel Aaron Burr, which resulted in the death of the former. Hamilton fell on the very ground where his son had expired in a duel, a few years before.

23. *What was the cause of the duel?*

The duel between Hamilton and Burr had its origin in political exasperation. Burr had lost the favor of the Republican party, and being nominated for the office of Governor of New York, was supported by many of the Federalists. He was opposed by Hamilton, who associated with him on friendly terms in public, but secretly denounced him in private.

24. *What was Burr's subsequent career?*

After he had abandoned the theatre of his former intrigues,

he betook himself to the West, and there organized a plan for the invasion and conquest of Mexico. His operations being considered treasonable to the government, he was apprehended and tried, but escaped conviction. In great poverty and distress, he spent some time in France and England, and thence returned to New York, where he practiced law for many years. He died in 1836, aged 80.

Injury to American Commerce.

25. *What measures exerted an injurious influence on American commerce?*

The constant war between France and England exerted a very pernicious influence on the commerce of the Union. England declared the coast of France in a state of blockade; and Bonaparte, as the leader of the French, retaliated by issuing the celebrated Berlin and Milan decrees, which declared all ports in, or belonging to Great Britain, as being under blockade.

26. *What was the effect of these measures?*

By these measures, American ships were liable to be confiscated, with their cargoes, by either of the two belligerent powers.

Right of Search and Impressment of Seamen, 1807.

27. *To what right did England lay claim?*

To add to the causes of complaint, England insisted on the right of searching American vessels, in pursuit of British seamen; and pretending to recognize among them, those who were undoubtedly natives of the United States, thousands of our citizens were thus forcibly impressed into her service.

28. *Were these claims enforced by England?*

Not content with impressing American seamen from merchant ships, in June, 1807, the captain of the British man-of-war Leopard, fired upon the Chesapeake, an American frigate, which

was unprepared for action, and having boarded her, deprived her of four seamen, three of whom were afterward proved to be American citizens.

29. *What was done by the Americans in relation to this outrage?*

This outrage upon a national vessel was followed by a proclamation of the President, forbidding British ships-of-war to enter the harbors of the United States, until ample satisfaction for the attack upon the Chesapeake should be made by the British government.

Orders in Council and Embargo, 1807.

30. *What was next done by England?*

In the month of November, England instituted the celebrated "Orders in Council," prohibiting all trade with France and her allies.

31. *How did Congress retaliate?*

The seizure of our cargoes and men being still continued, in December, 1807, Congress passed the famous Embargo law, forbidding American ships to leave their ports, and thus prohibiting all commercial intercourse between the belligerent nations.

32. *What was the effect of the Embargo on American industry?*

As the industry and capital of the country were, at that time, much devoted to foreign commerce, the effects of this measure were immediate and very distressing to the people. At the earnest petitions of American merchants, it was shortly afterward taken off.

33. *Who succeeded Jefferson as President?*

In March, 1809, Jefferson was succeeded by James Madison.

CHAPTER XVIII.

JAMES MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION—1809–1817.

Officers of Government.

JAMES MADISON, VIRGINIA, FOURTH PRESIDENT.

Born, March 4th, 1751; Died, June 28th, 1836, aged 85.

Inaugurated, March 4th, 1809; retired, March 3d, 1817.

VICE PRESIDENTS—GEORGE CLINTON, NEW YORK, AND ELBRIDGE GERRY, MASSACHUSETTS.

Secretaries of State—Robert Smith, Maryland; James Monroe, Virginia.

Secretaries of Treasury—Albert Gallatin, Pennsylvania; George W. Campbell, Tennessee; Alexander J. Dallas, Pennsylvania.

Secretaries of War—William Eustis, Massachusetts; John Armstrong, New York; James Monroe, Virginia; William H. Crawford, Georgia.

Secretaries of Navy—Paul Hamilton, South Carolina; William Jones, Pennsylvania; Benjamin W. Crowningshield, Massachusetts.

Post-Masters General—Gideon Granger, Connecticut; Return J. Meigs, Ohio.

Attorneys-General—Cæsar A. Rodney, Delaware; William Pinkney, Maryland; Richard Rush, Pennsylvania.

Election of Madison, and Difficulties with England.

1. *When was Madison inaugurated President?*

March 4th, 1809.

2. *What was the condition of the country on his accession?*

The condition of the country was in many respects gloomy and critical. The two great rival powers in Europe were still battling against each other, and America was suffering under the restrictions of commerce.

3. *Of what did Mr. Erskine, the British Minister inform the President?*

That the British Orders in Council of November, 1807, would

cease, in regard to the United States, on the 11th of June. Accordingly, the President issued his proclamation, renewing intercourse with England from and after that day.

4. *Did the English Government acquiesce in Mr. Erskine's stipulation?*

No, it denied his authority; and the President, accordingly, on the 10th of August, renewed the non-intercourse act with England.

5. *What took place in 1810?*

Bonaparte issued his "Rambouillet Decree." By this decree, all American vessels and cargoes arriving in any of the ports of France, or any country occupied by French troops, were ordered to be seized and condemned.

6. *What was done by Congress on the 1st of May?*

On the 1st of May, Congress passed an act excluding British and French armed vessels from the waters of the United States.

7. *When did the President issue his proclamation, renewing intercourse with France?*

Certain required conditions being complied with by France, the President issued his proclamation, November 2d, resuming intercourse with that nation.

Action between the Little Belt and the President, 1811.

8. *What engagement took place in May, 1811, and what was the result of the action?*

An engagement took place between the American frigate President, commanded by Captain Rodgers, and a British sloop-of-war, the Little Belt, commanded by Captain Bingham. A brief engagement ensued, and the guns of the enemy were soon silenced. The Little Belt had eleven men killed and twenty-one wounded, while the President had only one man wounded.

Indian Disturbances, 1811.*9. What troubles now arose on the Western frontiers?*

The Indians, induced probably by British influence, became hostile.

10. What took place, in the Fall of 1811?

General Harrison, then Governor of Indiana Territory marched against the tribes of the Wabash, and on the 6th November encamped at Tippecanoe. Fearing treachery, the troops slept on their arms in order of battle.

11. What ensued on the next morning?

Early on the following morning, the camp was furiously assailed, and a bloody and doubtful contest ensued; but after a heavy loss on both sides, the Indians were finally repulsed

War Proclaimed, June 19th, 1812.*12. When was war with England formally proclaimed?*

On the 4th of June, 1812, a bill declaring war against Great Britain passed the House of Representatives; and in the Senate, on the 17th. On the 19th, the President issued a proclamation of war.

13. Who was appointed commander-in-chief?

Exertions were made to enlist 25,000 men, and Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, an officer of the Revolution, was appointed commander-in-chief.

Affairs of 1812.*14. What was the first movement of the war?*

The war was begun on the North-western frontier by the march of General Hull, Governor of Michigan Territory, toward the British post at Malden, July 12th, 1812.

15. What took place in the meantime?

The American post at Mackinaw was surprised. A surrender

was immediately made, and the British were thus put in possession of one of the strongest posts in the United States.

16. *What happened soon after to Major Van Horne?*

Major Van Horne, who had been sent by General Hull to convoy a party approaching his camp with supplies, was defeated by a force of British and Indians, near Brownstown.

17. *How did Colonel Miller retaliate for this defeat?*

Having been sent by General Hull, with several hundred men, to accomplish the object previously attempted by Major Van Horne, he defeated a large force of British and Indians under the famous Tecumseh.

18. *What movement did General Hull now make?*

General Hull, learning of the approach of General Brock with a force of British, Canadians, and Indians, fell back to Detroit, and there determined to await the enemy.

General Hull's Surrender, August 16th, 1812.

19. *Describe the assault?*

While the American troops, advantageously posted, and numbering more than the combined force of the British and Indians, were anxiously awaiting the orders to fire, great was their mortification and rage when they were all suddenly ordered within the fort, and a white flag, in token of submission, was suspended from the walls. The whole army at Detroit, with all its forts and garrisons, were thus basely surrendered to the British.

20. *How was Hull's conduct received throughout the country?*

Nothing could exceed the indignation of the country. Hull was brought to trial for his conduct, and sentenced to death, but was finally pardoned by the President.

NOTE.—It is proper to state, that Hull published a vindication of his conduct, in 1814. In 1848, his grandson published another vindication, in which it is maintained that Hull's thorough knowledge of the character of the foe who menaced him, and a humane desire to spare his troops, was the sole cause for his surrendering the post. After the close of his unfortunate campaign, Hull never again appeared in public life. He was born in Connecticut in 1753, and died near Boston, 1825, aged 72.

Defeat at Queenstown, October 13th, 1812.

21. *Who commanded on the Niagara?*

General Van Rensselaer commanded a body of troops, consisting mostly of New York militia, at Lewiston, on the Niagara river,

22. *Describe his movements against Queenstown.*

With a portion of his force he crossed the river on the 13th of October, attacked and took the British batteries on Queens-town heights. At the very moment of success, the enemy received a reinforcement of several hundred men under Gen. Brock. These attempted to retake the works, but were gallantly repulsed, and General Brock was slain. In this state of affairs, the militia, who were still on the American side of the river, refused to cross to the assistance of their countrymen, and a fresh body of British arriving, the unfortunate party was overpowered, and either killed or made prisoners.

23. *Had the events of the war on the land been favorable to the Americans?*

Thus far the events of the war, on the land, had been unfavorable to the Americans; but on the ocean the national honor had been fully sustained by a series of brilliant victories.

Naval Victories, 1812.

24. *Which was the first naval engagement?*

On the 19th of August, the American frigate *Constitution*, Captain Hull, conquered the British frigate *Guerriere*, Captain Daeres, after an action of thirty minutes. The *Guerrière* was made a complete wreck. *Sixty-five* of her men were killed and *sixty-three* wounded. The *Constitution* had but *seven* killed and a like number wounded.

25. *What engagement took place September 7th?*

Captain Porter of the United States frigate *Essex*, captured off the banks of Newfoundland the British sloop-of-war *Alert*, after an action of only eight minutes.

26. *What action occurred on October 18th?*

The American sloop-of-war *Wasp*, of eighteen guns, captured the British brig *Frolic*, after an action of three-quarters of an hour, off the coast of North Carolina. The loss of the *Frolic* was about eighty in killed and wounded, while that of the *Wasp* was only ten. The *Wasp*, however, was immediately taken by the *Poictiers*, a British seventy-four.

27. *What naval engagement took place on the 25th of October, 1812?*

The frigate *United States*, of 44 guns, commanded by Commodore Decatur, captured the British man-of-war *Macedonian*, of 49 guns, off the Western Isles. The action continued an hour and a half. The *Macedonian* lost all her masts, and in killed and wounded over one hundred men. The loss on board the *United States* was not over twelve.

28. *When was the capture of the Java made?*

December 29th, the *Java*, British ship-of-war, Captain Lambert, was captured by the American frigate *Constitution*, Commodore Bainbridge. The engagement took place off St. Salvador, on the coast of Brazil, and continued for nearly two hours. On the 1st of January, the American commander, finding his prize incapable of being brought in, was obliged to burn her.

29. *In the several naval engagements just mentioned, what were the respective losses of the British and Americans?*

The total loss of the British was four hundred men; that of the Americans not over seventy-five.

30. *What is said of the other naval successes?*

Many of them occurred during this year. Our swift-sailing privateers, issuing from every American port, captured many of the enemy's vessels, and harassed their commerce everywhere. Nearly two hundred and fifty British vessels and three thousand prisoners were taken by American privateers. The number captured by the enemy was trifling.

Campaign, 1813.

31. *At the opening of this campaign, where were divisions of the American army stationed?*

One division, under General Harrison, was at the head of Lake Erie. Another, under General Dearborn, was between the lakes Ontario and Erie. And a third, under General Hampton, on the shores of Lake Champlain.

32. *Where were the British forces stationed?*

In Canada, under the general supervision of Sir George Prevost, under whom Colonels Proctor and Vincent had in charge the Upper Provinces, while the care of the Lower Provinces were in charge of General Sheaffe.

Battle at Frenchtown, January 22d, 1813.

33. *What engagement took place, in January, at Frenchtown?*

A detachment of about eight hundred men, under General Winchester, was surprised and defeated by the British and Indians, under General Proctor. About three hundred of them were slain; the remainder surrendering themselves prisoners of war, had the greater portion of their number inhumanly massacred by the Indians.

34. *In this situation of affairs, what did General Harrison do?*

Hearing of Winchester's defeat, he fortified himself at Fort Meigs, where, on the 1st of May, he was besieged by Proctor, with an army of two thousand British and Indians.

35. *Who came to General Harrison's assistance?*

General Clay, with twelve hundred Kentuckians; and on the 5th of May, the British were defeated with considerable loss.

36. *What occurred on the 9th of May?*

Being deserted by Tecumseh and his Indians, and seeing no

hope of taking the fort, the British general raised the siege, and retired to Fort Malden.

Gallant Defense of Fort Sandusky.

37. *What fort did Proctor next attack?*

In July, Proctor, with twelve hundred British and Indians proceeded against Fort Sandusky, a few miles south of Lake Erie, commanded by Major Croghan, a young man of twenty-one, with a force of one hundred and fifty men, and but one field-piece.

38. *Describe the attack upon the fort, and its result.*

For two days the fort was cannonaded; and a breach being made in the walls, the enemy advanced to the assault in two columns. The first of these was driven back with dreadful loss, while the second was literally mowed down by the field-piece, which had been loaded to the muzzle. Proctor fled in the greatest confusion, and abandoned his dead and wounded to the care of the Americans. His loss was one hundred and fifty in killed and wounded. Croghan had one killed and eight wounded.

Attack upon Fort York, and Death of General Pike, April 27th, 1813.

39. *What took place at York, in April?*

An expedition was fitted out against York, now called Toronto, on Lake Ontario. General Dearborn lead the expedition; but, being sick, the real command was given to General Pike. In a short time, the English and Indians were driven into their defenses; but, being hotly pressed, they soon abandoned the fort, and Pike, supposing that they had surrendered, halted his men. He had scarcely done so, when a powder magazine, prepared for the purpose, exploded near him, and killed about two hundred of his troops.

40. *What was his fate?*

He was mortally wounded. Being carried into the fort, he was asked, "If any thing could be done for him?" He answered, "Let me die with the captured British flag for a pillow." His order was obeyed. The flag which floated over the fort was hauled down, and rolled up; the head of the dying soldier was placed upon it; when, smiling faintly, he closed his eyes in death.

Attack on Fort George, May 27th, 1813.

41. *Against what British post did Dearborn next move?*

Against Fort George, on the Niagara, which he easily captured.

42. *Upon the retreat of the enemy, what did General Dearborn do?*

He sent a part of his army, under Generals Chandler and Winder, to overtake them. The British general, hearing of their approach, resolved to surprise them at night.

43. *Mention the ridiculous occurrence which ensued?*

The night was so dark, and the British had so quietly and cautiously advanced, that all was confusion when the fighting began. The American generals ran wildly about in the dark, in search of their troops, and were taken prisoners, while mistaking a party of the enemy for their own men. A similar accident happened to the British general. Four days after the battle, without hat or horse, he was found in an open field, not knowing where he was, or how he had got there.

Attack on Sackett's Harbor, 29th May, 1813.

44. *In the meantime, against what post had the British General Prevost sailed?*

As soon as he learned that Dearborn had gone against Fort George, he sailed to attack Sackett's Harbor, at the head of one thousand troops.

45. *By whom was he met, and with what result?*

On the 29th of May, he was repulsed, with a considerable loss of men, by General Brown.

Perry's Victory on Lake Erie, September 10, 1813.

46. What is said of the warlike preparations on Lake Erie?

During the year, two rival squadrons had been built and fitted out on this lake. The British fleet, of six vessels and sixty-three guns, was commanded by Commodore Barclay; the American, of nine vessels and fifty-four guns, by Commodore Perry.

47. Where did an action take place between the two squadrons?

Off Fort Malden, on Lake Erie.

48. What Indians had come to see the fight?

Tecumseh and his followers had heard that a "water fight" was to take place, and several thousands of them had assembled on a small island in the Detroit river, to behold the engagement. The British did not come out as soon as expected; when Tecumseh, mortified at the backwardness of his allies, paddled his canoe over to Malden, to see what was the matter.

49. Repeat his language to Proctor.

"You told us," said he, "that you commanded the waters; the Americans are daring you to fight them—why don't you go out?"

50. On what day was the battle fought?

On the 10th of September, Barclay was ready, and bore with his vessels toward the American fleet. Perry was prepared to meet him. Advancing with his ship, the *Lawrence*, he steered straight at the British line. The whole British fleet assailed his vessel, and for nearly two hours, all their shot was directed against the *Lawrence*. Every man on board was either killed or wounded, and the last gun discharged was loaded by Perry himself.

51. *Describe the action.*

Commodore Barclay, the commander of the British fleet, was a veteran, who had fought with Nelson at the Nile and Trafalgar, and had already lost an arm in the service of his country. Oliver Hazard Perry was in his 28th year, and as yet, had never seen a naval battle. At the mast-head of his ship, he had hoisted, as a signal, the last words of Lawrence, "Don't give up the ship!"

52. *What was now done?*

Finding the *Lawrence* could do nothing more, with his eight men who survived, and his little brother, who fought with him as a midshipman, he leaped into a boat, and transferred to the *Niagara* his flag, under which he had resolved to conquer or die. Amidst a shower of balls from the enemy, he reached his second ship, the *Niagara*, when the battle was renewed more fiercely than ever. The signal for close action was given, and obeyed; and as each American ship sailed up, and poured in its broadside, one by one the Englishmen hauled down their flags.

53. *What was the issue of the battle?*

In a few minutes more, Perry had won the victory; and while yet the smoke had not worn away, he sat down and wrote to General Harrison. "We have met the enemy, and they are ours—two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and one sloop."

Anecdotes.—I. From one of the vessels, the last remaining sponge-staff of the longest cannon fell over into the lake. Seeing that without it, the best gun on board would become useless, the gunner instantly plunged into the waves, recovered the staff, and being drawn up by his comrades, was soon loading and firing his cannon, as if nothing had happened.

II. A seaman on board the *Lawrence* was struck by a cannon ball on the shoulder, but resolutely refused to be carried below, while he had one arm left to serve his country.

III. Three Indians had been placed in the "round-top" of Barclay's flag vessel, to pick off the American officers with their rifles, during the "water-fight." Finding their situation very uncomfortable, they soon deserted their position, and got as far below as they could; their pet bear, more courageous than the savages, was found, when the battle was over, enjoying itself on deck, lapping up the blood of the fallen.

Battle of the Thames, October 5th, 1813.

54. *What advantage did Perry's victory on Lake Erie afford the Americans?*

It made them masters of the lake. General Harrison at once proceeded against Fort Malden, which he took; and thence pressed toward the enemy, who were encamped on the river Thames.

55. *Describe the battle of the Thames.*

This battle was fought on the 5th of October, 1813. General Proctor, assisted by Tecumseh and his Indians, led the forces of the enemy. The Americans were commanded by General Harrison. The British were first routed, and Tecumseh being slain, the Indians also fled. Proctor first gave the signal of retreat; his officers followed him. The Indians fought more bravely; nor did they yield until Tecumseh was struck dead on the spot where he stood.

56. *What did this victory gain the Americans?*

The possession of all the territory that had been lost by Hull's surrender.

57. *What is said of the Creek Indians?*

Previous to his death, Tecumseh had been amongst them, and, by his powerful eloquence, had roused them against the whites. On the 30th of August, 1813, a large party of them surprised and captured Fort Mimms, on the Alabama river, and massacred almost three hundred men, women, and children.

58. *Who was sent against them, and with what success?*

Generals Jackson and Coffee were sent against them; and after obtaining several advantages, at last completely routed them in a battle at the Great Horse Shoe Bend, on the Tallapoosa river. One thousand of their warriors are said to have been slain.

59. *Repeat the speech of their great leader, Weathersford?*

When he beheld nearly every one of his warriors slain around

him, he approached General Jackson, and standing erect before him, said—"The great warrior of the Creeks is before you; he has fought the white men bravely, and done them all the harm he could. His warriors have fought until they are all slain. When there was a chance for success, Weathersford never asked for peace. There is none now, and he asks it for the remnant of his nation."

Movements of the Northern Army.

60. *What were the movements of the army at the North?*

The army at the North, stationed on the shores of Lake Champlain, was joined, in October, by the army of the Centre, commanded by General Wilkinson, who had succeeded Dearborn as commander-in-chief. They now proceeded down the St. Lawrence against Montreal.

61. *What action took place at Williamsburgh?*

On the 11th of November, the Americans, under General Boyd, made an attack on this place, but were repulsed, with a loss of three hundred in killed, wounded, and prisoners. The remnant of the army went into winter-quarters on the south bank of the St. Lawrence.

Movements against Canada.

62. *What preparations were made against Canada, under Generals Wilkinson and Hampton?*

Great preparations were made for the conquest of that province; but a disagreement between the two generals prevented any thing of importance being effected.

63. *What villages were burnt?*

The village of Newark, in Canada, was burnt by the Americans; in retaliation for which, the British crossed over and burnt Buffalo, and some other villages.

64. *What was done at the South during this year?*

The British, under Admiral Cockburn, committed various

depredations in the South, and on the shores of the Chesapeake; but they were finally repulsed, at Craney Island, near Norfolk.

Naval Engagements of 1813.

65. *What naval engagements took place during the year 1813?*

In February, the *Hornet*, commanded by Captain Lawrence, captured the British sloop, the *Peacock*. In June, the Chesapeake, under Captain Lawrence, was captured by the *Shannon* commanded by Captain Broke. In August, the *Argus* was captured by the English sloop, the *Pelican*; and in September, the British brig, the *Boxer*, surrendered to the *Enterprise*.

NOTE.—Read interesting accounts of these engagements in Cooper's "Naval History of the United States," and in Russell's "History of the War of 1812."

Campaign of 1814.

66. *How was the campaign of 1814 distinguished?*

This campaign was distinguished by more hard fighting in Canada than had before occurred. On the 2d of July, the Americans, under General Brown, having taken Fort Erie, proceeded to attack the British, under General Drummond, at Chippewa, where, on the 5th, an obstinate engagement took place, which terminated in favor of the Americans.

67. *Describe the Battle at Bridgewater.*

On the 25th of July, a sanguinary and warmly-contested battle was fought at Bridgewater, by the Americans, under General Brown, and the British, under Generals Drummond and Riall. The British were forced to retreat, with the loss of about nine hundred in killed, wounded, and taken.

68. *What afterward took place?*

The American army was also so much weakened, that it fell back to Fort Erie, which the British afterward attempted to storm; but they were repulsed with severe loss.

69. *Describe the British attempt on Plattsburg.*

Sir George Prevost, having received large reinforcements from the troops which had been employed under the Duke of Wellington in Spain, now advanced, with an army of fourteen thousand men, to carry offensive war into the United States. His first attempt was on Plattsburg.

70. *What naval force accompanied the operations of the land army?*

The operations of the army were accompanied by those of the British naval force, on Lake Champlain, consisting of ninety-five guns and one thousand and fifty men, commanded by Commodore Downie.

71. *What was the size of the American squadron by which they were defeated?*

This force was totally defeated, September 11th, 1814, by the American fleet, having eighty-six guns and eight hundred and twenty-six men, under the command of Commodore Macdonough.

72. *What land battle took place during this naval engagement?*

During the engagement between the fleets, Sir George Prevost attacked the forts of Plattsburg, but was effectually repulsed by the Americans, under General Macomb. The loss of the British, in killed, wounded, and deserters, was estimated at two thousand five hundred, while that of the Americans, both on the land and water, was only two hundred and thirty-one.

British Operations on the Chesapeake.

73. *What were the operations of the British fleet in August?*

In August, a British fleet of about sixty sail arrived in the Chesapeake, and an army of about five thousand men, under General Ross, landed at Patuxent, about forty miles from the city of Washington. Having easily put to flight the American

militia, under General Winder, at Bladensburg, the enemy entered Washington, burnt the Capitol, the President's house, and other public buildings, and retired without molestation.

74. *What occurred in September?*

In September, about a fortnight after this transaction, the British army, to the number of about seven thousand men, under General Ross and Admiral Cockburn, made a similar attempt on Baltimore; but, after gaining some advantages, they were finally repulsed. In this attempt, General Ross was killed.

75. *How did the American flag sustain its reputation on the ocean?*

It gloriously sustained its reputation on the ocean, and in no instance yielded to an inferior or equal force. The American frigate, the *Essex*, however, was captured by the British frigate, the *Phœbe*, and the sloop *Cherub*, of a superior force. The frigate *President* was also captured by a squadron of the enemy; but the British vessels of war, the *Epervier*, the *Arrow*, the *Reindeer*, the *Cyane*, the *Levant*, and the *Penguin*, were taken by the Americans.

76. *When and where did Commissioners, on the part of the United States and England, meet for negotiating a peace?*

In April, 1813, commissioners, on the part of the United States, were appointed to meet others from England, at Gottenburg; but the place of meeting was afterward changed to Ghent, where a treaty was finally signed on the 24th of December, 1814.

Battle of New Orleans, 8th January, 1815

77. *Describe the attack on New Orleans, and its result.*

While the negotiation for peace was in progress, a large armament, under the command of Sir Edward Packenham, was

fitted out by Great Britain for an attack on New Orleans, with the intention, apparently, of ending the war with eclat ; but the design met with a most signal and fatal defeat. The British, after enduring great fatigues and numerous difficulties, and sustaining some desperate encounters, assaulted the works thrown up for the defense of the city, on the 8th of January, 1815. They were dreadfully cut to pieces and repulsed by the Americans, under General Jackson. The loss of the enemy, in killed, wounded, and captured, amounted to about two thousand six hundred. Among the slain were the commander-in-chief, General Packenham, and other principal officers. The loss of the Americans was only seven killed and six wounded.

78. *What occurred after this battle ?*

This was the last important operation of the war ; the joyful news of peace having happily put an end to further hostilities.

Hartford Convention, December, 1814.

79. *How did the Federalists of New England manifest their disapproval of the war ?*

They complained that the war was badly managed ; that it had saddled the country with an enormous debt, an unequal burden of which they were obliged to bear.

80. *What Convention was assembled at Hartford, and for what purpose ?*

In December, 1814, a Convention of delegates appointed by the legislatures of Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island, and a partial representation from Vermont and New Hampshire, assembled at Hartford for the purpose of considering the grievances of which the people complained, and for devising some measures for redress.

81. *What is said of this Convention ?*

Its sessions, being secret, were denounced by the friends of the war as treasonable. Its plans for disunion or secession, if any existed, were rendered abortive, soon after its adjournment,

by the President's proclamation of peace. Nor did any party in the Union fail to unite in the national thanksgiving to the Almighty for that blessed event.

War with Algiers, 1815.

82. *Why was war declared against Algiers?*

The United States had paid tribute to Algiers since 1795; every year, as his strength increased, the ruler of that state became more insolent. In 1812, the Dey compelled Mr. Lear, the American Consul, to pay him \$27,000, for the safety of himself, family, and a few Americans, under penalty of being all made slaves.

83. *What did our government do in 1815?*

It ordered a squadron, under Commodore Decatur, to proceed to the Mediterranean. On the 7th of June, 1815, Decatur met and captured a frigate of the Algerine admiral, and another vessel, with almost six hundred men. Sailing to the Bay of Algiers, he demanded the instant surrender of all American prisoners, full indemnification for all property destroyed, and absolute relinquishment of all claims to tribute, from the United States, in future.

84. *What did the Dey do?*

Informed of the fate of a part of his fleet, he yielded to the terms demanded, and signed a treaty, June 30th, to that effect.

85. *What did Decatur accomplish at Tunis and Tripoli?*

In July, 1815, he sailed for Tunis, and demanded and received from the Bashaw, \$46,000, in payment for American vessels, which he had allowed the British to capture in his harbor. In August, he made a similar demand upon the bashaw of Tripoli, and received \$25,000, and the restoration of prisoners.

86. *What did this cruise effect?*

It effected full security to American commerce in the Mediterranean. In bearing home the treaty, the sloop-of-war, under command of Captain Shubrick, was lost with all on board.

Closing Events.

87. *What were the closing events of Madison's administration?*

The United States Bank, which had been chartered in 1791, having expired in 1811, a second Bank, called the Bank of the United States, was incorporated in 1816; its capital was \$35,000,000, and its charter was to continue in force for twenty-five years.

In December, 1816, Indiana was admitted into the Union as an independent State.

CHAPTER XIX.**MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION—1817—1825.****Officers of Government.****JAMES MONROE, VIRGINIA, FIFTH PRESIDENT.**

Born, 1754; Died, July 4th, 1836, aged 72.

inaugurated at Washington, March, 1817; retired, March 3d, 1825.

DANIEL D. TOMPKINS, NEW YORK, VICE-PRESIDENT.

Secretary of State—John Q. Adams, Massachusetts.

Secretary of Treasury—William H. Crawford, Georgia.

Secretaries of War—Isaac Shelby, Kentucky; John C. Calhoun, South Carolina.

Secretaries of Navy—Benjamin W. Crowningshield, Massachusetts; Smith Thompson, New York; Samuel L. Southard, New York.

Post-Masters General—Return J. Meigs, Ohio; John McLean, Ohio.

Attorneys-General—Richard Rush, Pennsylvania; William Wirt, Virginia.

Condition of the Country.

1. *What was the condition of the country, at Monroe's election?*

The country, at this time, had brighter prospects before it than for many years previous. Peace now reigned supreme within its borders, and prosperity soon relieved it from those embarrassments which are the necessary results of war.

Mississippi and Illinois admitted as States.

2. When was the State of Mississippi admitted into the Union?

On the 11th day of December, 1817, Mississippi became a sovereign and independent State, and was, accordingly, as such, admitted into the Union.

3. When was Illinois admitted?

In 1818, Illinois having adopted a State constitution, became a member of the American Union.

Difficulties with Florida, 1817.

4. What occurred during this year?

During this year, a war was waged between the Seminole Indians and the United States. Many outrages were perpetrated by this tribe upon the inhabitants of the border States; and General Gaines was instructed to march against, and force them to surrender.

5. Who succeeded General Gaines in command?

The forces of Gaines being insufficient, General Jackson was ordered to assume the command, and to raise from the neighboring States such troops as he might deem necessary to the subjugation of the hostile Indians.

6. What was his success?

At the head of one thousand Tennesseans, he marched into Florida, took possession of a feeble Spanish garrison, called St. Mark's, where he found Arbuthnot and Ambrister, who were accused of having excited the Indians to hostilities.

7. What was done with these men?

Having been apprehended on the charge, they were tried by a court-martial, sentenced and executed.

8. *What did Jackson next do?*

On hearing that the Governor of Pensacola favored the Indians, Jackson marched against that place, stormed the garrison, and took possession of its fortifications.

9. *What happened at Baracas?*

The Governor of Pensacola having fled to Baracas, General Jackson immediately followed him thither, and having opened a furious cannonade upon the place, the Governor was forced to surrender.

10. *What was done with the Governor and his followers?*

Agreeable to the terms of capitulation which had been entered into, the Governor, together with his officers and men, were sent to Havana. Jackson then announced the war as settled, and returned to Nashville.

11. *What treaty was concluded in 1819?*

On the 22d of February, 1819, a treaty was concluded, at Washington, by which East and West Florida were ceded by Spain to the United States.

Arkansas, Alabama, and Maine.

12. *When was the Territory of Arkansas organized?*

On the 22d of March, 1819, the government of Arkansas Territory was organized.

13. *What new States were admitted into the Union?*

On the 14th of December, Alabama, having adopted a State constitution, was admitted into the Union; and in the year following, 1820, the Province of Maine, which had been connected with the State of Massachusetts, was separated from it, and became an independent State.

Admission of Missouri—Slave Question.

14. *What question arose on the application of Missouri for admission into the Union?*

On the application of Missouri, in 1821, the question arose, as to whether she should be admitted as a Slave, or Free State. After a long and exciting discussion, it was determined that slavery should be allowed in Missouri, but prohibited in all the future States, north of the line $36^{\circ} 30$ minutes.

15. *What happened in 1821?*

In March, of this year, Mr. Monroe's term of office as President expired, but he was re-elected President, and Mr. Tompkins, Vice-President.

Suppression of Piracy in the Gulf of Mexico.

16. *What difficulties now presented themselves?*

About this time the Gulf of Mexico was infested with gangs of pirates, who regarded no law, and entertained no mercy for merchant ships belonging to the United States.

17. *Who was sent out against them, and with what success?*

Commodore Porter was sent out by the government, for the purpose of punishing these miscreants, and succeeded, in a comparatively short time, in completely breaking up their organization.

La Fayette's Visit to the United States, 1824.

18. *Who visited the United States in 1824?*

During the summer of 1824, the Marquis de Lafayette paid a visit to the land, whose cause he had advocated in its darkest hours, and whose freedom he so materially assisted in establishing.

19. *What is said of him?*

His head was now frosted with the snows of seventy winters, and nearly fifty years had rolled away since he fought, side by side, with Washington, in the sacred cause of Liberty. He traveled through every State in the Union, and was everywhere received with the warmest demonstrations of love and esteem.

20. *What remuneration had Lafayette received for his services to the Colonies, in their struggle for Independence?*

He had received no remuneration whatever, but had expended nearly all his own private fortune in behalf of the cause which he so nobly advocated.

21. *What did Congress now do?*

Congress now presented him with \$200,000, and a township of land. The frigate Brandywine was prepared to convey him home, and he was attended to the place of embarkation by the President and the public officers at Washington.

22. *What is said of the next Presidential election?*

At the next Presidential election, the most intense political excitement prevailed through the length and breadth of the country.

23. *Who were the candidates for the Presidency?*

The candidates were Messrs. Adams (J. Q.), Crawford, Jackson, and Clay. Neither of these candidates having received a majority, the House of Representatives decided in favor of Mr. John Quincy Adams. Mr. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was elected Vice-President.

24. *How long had Mr. Monroe been in public life?*

Mr. Monroe, after having spent fifty years in public life, found the quiet of his home, in Virginia, peculiarly agreeable.

25. *When did he die?*

Mr. Monroe expired on the 4th of July, 1831, just five years after his illustrious predecessors, Adams and Jefferson, had quitted the scenes of their earthly labors.

CHAPTER XX.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION—1825-1829.

Officers of Government.

JOHN Q. ADAMS, MASSACHUSETTS, SIXTH PRESIDENT.

Born, July 11th, 1767; Died, February 23d, 1848, aged 80.

Inaugurated at Washington, March 4th, 1825; Retired, March 9th, 1829.

JOHN CALDWELL CALHOUN, So. CA., VICE-PRESIDENT.

Secretary of State—Henry Clay, Kentucky.

Secretary of Treasury—Richard Rush, Pennsylvania.

Secretaries of War—James Barbour, Virginia; Peter B. Porter, Virginia.

Secretary of Navy—Samuel L. Southard, New York.

Post-Master General—John McLean, Ohio.

Attorney-General—William Wirt, Virginia.

The Election.

1. *Under what circumstances was Adams elected?*

Adams, of Massachusetts, Crawford, of Georgia, Clay, of Kentucky, and Jackson, of Tennessee, had been candidates for the Presidency. No one of them having obtained a majority of the votes cast by the electoral college, the election was carried into the House of Representatives; and, by a union of the friends of Adams and Clay, Adams was elected.

2. *By whom was his administration opposed?*

Soon after his inauguration, the friends of Crawford and Jackson combined to oppose his administration, and party spirit once more became violent throughout the country.

Death of Adams and Jefferson, July 4th, 1826.

3. *What renders the 50th Anniversary of American Independence memorable?*

On the 4th of July, 1826, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson, two of America's greatest benefactors, expired, the former at the advanced age of ninety years, the latter at eighty-two.

4. *What were the last words of these two great men?*

The last audible words of Adams were, "Jefferson survives;" while those of Jefferson were, "I resign my soul to my God, and my daughter to my country."

5. *What has Daniel Webster said, in allusion to these events?*

"It is right," said Webster, alluding to the regrets and sorrow felt over the Union, "that it should be thus; the tears which flow, and the honors that are paid, when the friends of the Republic die, give hope that the Republic itself may be immortal."

Removal of the Indians.

6. *What proposition was made by President Adams, respecting the Indians?*

He renewed a proposition, which had been made by his predecessor, Mr. Monroe, to purchase the lands of the Indians still left in the different States, and remove them to settlements west of the Mississippi river.

7. *How was this proposition received by the Indians?*

Some of the tribes objected to parting with their territory; but in February, 1826, the Creeks ceded all their possessions in Georgia to the United States, excepting a million of acres, which were shortly afterward purchased.

Excitement on the Subject of Free-Masonry.

8. *What new element was now introduced into the political contests of the country?*

Free-Masonry, an ancient institution of Europe, originating with builders and architects, found its way to America in 1730. Lodges were multiplied; and Washington, De Witt Clinton,

and other distinguished men, became "Free and Accepted Masons."

9. *What excitements were raised against the Masons?*

In September, 1826, an intense excitement was raised against the Order, on account of their supposed abduction of one William Morgan, a member of the fraternity. A party was accordingly formed, with the object of suppressing their organization in the United States, as dangerous to the freedom of the government and to the safety of the community.

10. *With what success?*

Masonry was, however, too strong to be put down; but for many years, the Anti-Masons exercised a powerful influence for political purposes.

Internal Improvements, and the Protective System.

11. *What two objects now engaged the President's attention?*

The two objects which now commended themselves to Mr. Adams's attention, were internal improvements and domestic manufactures. He was in favor of opening national roads and canals, improving harbors and channels, erecting light-houses, and making provisions for the safety of coast navigation.

12. *What did he recommend, in order to advance the manufacturing interests?*

To advance the manufacturing interests, which had become very important in the Northern and Eastern States, he recommended increasing the duties on imported goods.

13. *What was done by Congress, in 1828?*

In 1828, in accordance with the views of the President, Congress increased the duties on cotton, woolen, and linen fabrics, silk, iron, &c.

14. *How did the North feel toward the new Tariff?*

As the North was largely interested in the manufacture of

some of these articles, and as it benefitted that section especially, the new Tariff was warmly supported by Northern statesmen.

15. *How was the South affected?*

Southern statesmen violently opposed the measure, inasmuch as the South being an agricultural, and not a manufacturing country, had to be burdened with the price of protection.

16. *Where was the feeling of disapprobation particularly exhibited?*

The feeling of disapprobation was especially exhibited in the State of South Carolina. The people of Charleston are said to have placed their flags at half-mast, as a token of their disapproval of the measures.

17. *Was Mr. Adams elected a second term?*

No; a most bitter opposition had been made to him, from the first day of his induction into office, and General Jackson succeeded him by an overwhelming majority.

18. *What is further said of Mr. Adams?*

Mr. Adams, at the close of his term of office, retired to his farm; and was shortly afterward elected Representative in Congress, which office he held till the day of his death.

19. *Where and when did he die?*

He died at his post of duty, in the National Capitol, surrounded by his distinguished associates and friends, on the 23d of February, 1848.

20. *What were his last words?*

The last words of Mr. Adams were these: "This is the last of Earth; I am content."

CHAPTER XXI.

ANDREW JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION—1829-1837.

Officers of Government.

ANDREW JACKSON, SOUTH CAROLINA, SEVENTH PRESIDENT.

Born, March 16th, 1767; Died, June 8, 1845, aged 78.

Inaugurated at Washington, March 4, 1829; retired, March 3, 1837.

J. C. CALHOUN, SOUTH CAROLINA, AND MARTIN VAN BUREN,
NEW YORK, VICE-PRESIDENTS.

Secretaries of State—Martin Van Buren, New York; Edward Livingston, Louisiana; Louis McLane, Delaware; John Forsyth, Georgia.

Secretaries of Treasury—Samuel D. Ingham, Pennsylvania; Louis McLane, Delaware; William J. Duane, Pennsylvania; Roger B. Taney, Maryland; Levi Woodbury, New Hampshire.

Secretaries of War—John H. Eaton, Tennessee; Lewis Cass, Ohio.

Secretaries of Navy—John Branch, North Carolina; Levi Woodbury, New Hampshire; Mahlon Dickerson, New Jersey.

Post-Masters General—William T. Barry, Kentucky; Amos Kendall, Kentucky.

Attorneys-General—John M. Berrien, Georgia; Roger B. Taney, Maryland; Benjamin F. Butler, New York.

Principal Measures of the Administration.

1. *By what was General Jackson's administration signalized?*

By a more extensive removal of office-holders than had been practiced by any of his predecessors; by a persevering hostility to the United States Bank, which terminated in the overthrow of that institution; and by opposition to the policy of making appropriations for internal improvements, and to a protective Tariff.

2. *What bills did the President veto?*

Several bills making appropriations for internal improve-

ments ; besides, a bill for the renewal of the charter of the United States Bank.

South Carolina Nullification, 1832.

3. *What Convention assembled at Columbia, South Carolina, in 1832, and for what purpose ?*

In November, 1832, a Convention of delegates, called by the Legislature of South Carolina, assembled at Columbia, and pronounced the Acts of Congress of 1828 and 1832, imposing duties on foreign imports for the protection of domestic manufactures, unconstitutional, void, and not binding upon the citizens of that State. The remedy proposed was termed Nullification.

4. *Upon what grounds did South Carolina maintain her position ?*

She maintained, that Congress was a body acting under limited and definite powers, and that whenever that body assumed powers not granted, it was the right and duty of the citizens of each State, to oppose such usurpation ; that the Tariff acts of 1828 and 1832, &c., and sundry internal improvement appropriations, were unconstitutional, and therefore, void, and that it was the right and duty of the State to judge of the mode and measure of redress.

5. *What position did the President assume ?*

He maintained, that, even if Congress had transcended its authority, it had done so rather by *implication* than *directly* ; and that the only competent authority to annul a law of Congress is the Supreme Court of the United States ; that, whenever a State assumes a right to annul a law of Congress, she sets up an authority not recognized in the Constitution ; and that Congress having passed the Tariff law, it was his duty, as the chief executive officer, to see it enforced.

6. *Under this view, what Proclamation did Jackson issue ?*

In December, 1832, President Jackson issued a Proclamation,

containing an exposition of the principles and powers of the General Government, and expressing a determination to maintain the laws.

7. *What did Governor Hayne, of South Carolina, then do ?*

He issued a counter-proclamation, calling on the people to resist any attempt to enforce the Tariff laws.

8. *What was the next step of the President ?*

The President then addressed a message to Congress, recommending such measures as would enable the Executive to suppress the spirit of insubordination, and sustain the laws of the United States.

9. *What afterward took place, and what was the result ?*

Every thing, for a time, wore a threatening aspect ; but more moderate counsels at length prevailed. An appeal was made to South Carolina by the General Assembly of Virginia ; Mr. Clay introduced a new bill, modifying the Tariff, called the "Compromise Tariff," which was enacted on the first of March, 1833. In consequence of this, the Convention of South Carolina assembled, on the 11th of March and repealed the Nullifying Ordinance.

Removal of the Deposits, 1833.

10. *What was done by President Jackson, soon after his election for a second term.*

In March, 1833, President Jackson, having been re-elected, entered on his second term ; and in the following September he directed the Secretary of the Treasury, Mr. Duane, to remove the public funds or deposits from the United States Bank.

11. *What was done by Mr. Duane and Mr. Taney ?*

Mr. Duane having declined to make the removal, was dismissed from office, and Mr. Taney was appointed in his place. By the latter, the deposits were removed, and placed in several State banks.

12. *What was done by the Senate?*

A resolution, strongly censuring the President for this measure, was passed by the Senate in 1834.

13. *Three years after this, what did the Senate do in reference to their vote of censure?*

On the 16th of January, 1837, by a vote of twenty-four to nineteen, they passed their celebrated expunging resolution. Broad black lines were drawn round the offensive resolution, by the Secretary of the Senate, and across it these words were written: "*Expunged by order of the Senate, this 16th day of January, 1837.*"

14. *As regards this event, what anecdote does Mr. Benton relate?*

The gratification of the President at this event was extreme. He gave a grand dinner to the expungers and their wives; and being himself too weak to sit at the table, he only met the company, placed the head expunger, Mr. Benton, in his chair, and withdrew to his sick chamber.

Difficulties with France, 1834.

15. *What is said of the difficulties with France?*

In 1834, the country was disturbed by an apprehension of a hostile collision with France. The French government, by a treaty negotiated in 1831, had agreed to pay \$5,000,000 for injuries done to American commerce during the wars of Napoleon, but had failed to fulfill its engagements.

16. *What did the President recommend?*

Reprisals upon French commerce, and directed the American minister to demand his passport and leave Paris.

17. *Was this recommendation carried out?*

The measure, however, was not adopted by Congress; and the danger of open hostility was happily removed by a compliance of the French government, during the following year,

to fulfill its stipulations. Portugal was made to pay a similar indemnity. Treaties were concluded with Russia and Belgium ; and at no period of our history did the United States stand higher in the estimation of European Powers.

Great Fire in New York.

18. *What disastrous fire occurred in New York ?*

On the 16th of December, 1835, a great fire broke out in the city of New York, which destroyed the most of that part of the city which is the seat of its commercial transactions. The loss was estimated at upward of \$17,000,000.

Arkansas and Michigan admitted as States.

19. *When were Arkansas and Michigan admitted into the Union ?*

On the 15th of June, 1836, these territories were admitted into the American Union as independent States. Arkansas recognizing the institution of Slavery, and Michigan prohibiting it.

20. *What was the public debt of the United States in 1816 ?*

The public debt, after the last war with Great Britain, amounted to upward of \$127,000,000.

21. *When was it all paid off ?*

In 1836, the national debt was extinguished ; and a surplus of nearly \$40,000,000 had accumulated in the Treasury. This amount Congress ordered to be distributed among the several States.

22. *When did Jackson's second term expire ?*

On the 3d of March, 1837. After witnessing the inauguration of his successor on the following day, he retired to his private residence at the Hermitage, in Tennessee, where he died, June 8th, 1845, in the seventy-eighth year of his age. To the last he retained his senses and intellect unclouded. Surrounded

by his domestics and friends, he expired with the utmost calmness, expressing the highest confidence in the saving mercy of his Redeemer.

CHAPTER XXII.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION—1837–1841.

Officers of Government.

MARTIN VAN BUREN, NEW YORK, EIGHTH PRESIDENT.

Born, December 5th, 1782.

Inaugurated at Washington, March 4th, 1837; retired, March 3d, 1841.

RICHARD M. JOHNSON, VICE-PRESIDENT.

Secretary of State—John Forsyth, Georgia.

Secretary of Treasury—Levi Woodbury, New Hampshire.

Secretary of War—Joel R. Poinsett, South Carolina.

Secretaries of Navy—Mahlon Dickerson, New Jersey; James K. Paulding, New York.

Post-Masters General—Amos Kendall, Kentucky; John M. Niles, Connecticut.

Attorneys-General—Benjamin F. Butler, New York; Felix Grundy, Tennessee.

1. *What is said of Mr. Van Buren previous to his election to the Presidency?*

Previous to Mr. Van Buren's elevation to the Presidency, he had been long in public life, and had been honored with several offices in his native State and under the General Government. He had not, however, like his predecessors, been connected with the scenes of the Revolution, having been born in the concluding year of that struggle.

Condition of the Country.

2. *What is said of the pecuniary affairs of the country at this time?*

In less than one month after the accession of Mr. Van Buren, the pecuniary affairs of the country, seriously deranged before, became visibly worse.

3. *What was the extent of failure in New York?*

During the month of March and April, the failures in the city of New York alone, were estimated to amount to \$100,000,000.

Suspension of Specie Payments, 1837.

4. *During this state of pecuniary embarrassment, what petition was sent to the President?*

During this state of affairs, a petition was sent to Mr. Van Buren, earnestly soliciting him to rescind the "specie requiring circular," and to summon at once an Extra Session of Congress. The President declined to comply with the request.

5. *What happened shortly afterward?*

Two days after the President's answer was forwarded to his constituents, in New York, the banks in that city, without a single exception, ceased to redeem their notes in specie. In a few months all the banks throughout the country followed the example of those in New York.

Extra Session of Congress, 1837.

6. *What induced the President to call an Extra Session of Congress?*

Although Mr. Van Buren at first had declined convoking a Congress, yet subsequent events pressed that measure upon him.

7. *When did Congress meet?*

At his summons, Congress met on the 4th of September, and closed its session on the 16th of October, following.

8. *What were the reasons which the President assigned as the causes of the pecuniary distress?*

In his message, the President assigned as the causes of the pecuniary distresses of the country, overaction in business, arising from the very large issues of bank paper, and other facilities for enlargement of credit; the contraction of a large foreign debt; investments in unproductive lands; vast internal improvements; and the loss sustained by the city of New York in the great fire of December, 1835,

9. *To what two measures did Congress now confine its legislation?*

Congress now confined its legislation to the following measures: A provision for postponing till the 1st of January, 1839, the payment of the fourth instalment of the deposits with the States; and the issue of Treasury Notes to an amount not above \$10,000,000, reimbursable in one year, and of denominations of not less than fifty dollars.

Resumption of Specie Payments, 1838.

10. *When did the banks resume the payment of specie?*

To the great joy of the whole country, but especially commercial men, the banks resumed specie payment on the 13th of August, 1838.

11. *What happened in October following?*

In October of the following year, the banks of Philadelphia again suspended; and in this, they were followed by the banks of Pennsylvania generally, and those of the Southern and Western States.

12. *What was done to the New York Banks in 1837?*

In 1837, the banks of New York were required by law to resume the payment of specie. They endeavored to induce other banks to do voluntarily what they were compelled to do by law.

13. *What is said of the public with respect to the monetary condition of the country?*

The public were very anxious for a resumption of payment on the part of the banks; an effort was made to accomplish this object, and was effected, contrary to the opinion of some of the most able financiers, who predicted a relapse.

14. *Was this prediction verified?*

This prediction was verified, in respect to the banks of Philadelphia and the South. Those of New York and New England, with some few exceptions, resolved to continue the payment of specie.

Seminole War.

15. *What of the Seminole war?*

The war with the Seminoles in Florida, commenced during General Jackson's presidency, was continued during the greater part of Van Buren's, and occasioned a large expense to the General Government.

16. *By whom was a treaty effected?*

A treaty was made with the Seminoles by General Jessup, by which they agreed to suspend hostilities, and remove beyond the Mississippi. Through the influence of their chief—Osceolo—this treaty being broken, Osceolo was seized, and sent to Fort Moultrie, on Sullivan's Island, near Charleston where he died a few weeks after.

17. *When was the war terminated?*

In December, 1840, a temporary suspension of the war was effected by Colonel Harney, who penetrated the everglades, and captured a large number of savages.

Internal Improvements.

18. *What is said of Internal Improvements?*

During Mr. Van Buren's administration, large sums were appropriated for internal improvements, though he, as his predecessor, was opposed to them.

19. *For what were expenditures principally made?*

Expenditures were made chiefly, for repairs to the Cumberland road, and its continuance through Indiana and Illinois ; for lighthouses, life-boats, buoys, and monuments.

Difficulties in Maine.

20. *What difficulties now arose ?*

The North-Eastern boundary of the Union had long been a source of dispute between the United States and England. The question now seemed to be on the eve of a decision, by recourse to arms, between the British in New Brunswick and the State of Maine.

21. *What course was adopted by the General Government ?*

In this posture of affairs, General Scott was sent by the Executive to the scene of hostilities, and in 1839, Congress clothed the Executive with full powers to defend the territory, should Great Britain attempt to exercise any authority over it.

Northern Border Troubles.

22. *What was the cause of trouble in the North ?*

About this period of Van Buren's administration, a rebellion broke out in Canada. The sympathies of the Americans, particularly in the Northern part of Vermont and New York, were strongly enlisted.

22. *How did they regard this rebellion ?*

They regarded it as the sacred cause of liberty and human rights. In consequence of which they formed themselves into associations called Hunters' Lodges, with the avowed object of aiding the insurgents in their endeavors to establish the independence of Canada.

23. *How did the President act in the matter ?*

He strongly censured the course taken by the American citizens, and accordingly issued a Proclamation, exhorting such persons as had violated their duties, to return peaceably to their homes.

Sub-Treasury Bill.

24. *What measure had Mr. Van Buren strongly recommended?*

In nearly every message, he had recommended, and even urged, the adoption of a new mode of keeping the public moneys, by the appointment of independent sub-treasurers, to whose custody it should be confided—subject, however, to the call of the Secretary of the Treasury.

25. *When was it adopted?*

At length, after much opposition, it was adopted, to the great gratification of the President, on the session of Congress in 1840. This was considered the greatest financial measure of his administration.

Election of General Harrison.

26. *Who were candidates for the Presidency in 1840?*

Mr. Van Buren, as the candidate of the Democrats, and General W. H. Harrison, as that of the Whigs.

27. *What is said of the political campaign?*

The canvassing for the Presidential election of 1840 was most exciting. For months the friends of the rival candidates, from Florida to Maine, were zealously at work.

28. *What was the result of the election?*

General Harrison was elected President, and John Tyler, of Virginia, Vice-President.

CHAPTER XXIII.

HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION—1841.

Officers of Government.

WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON, VIRGINIA, NINTH PRESIDENT.

Born, February 9th, 1773; Died, April 4th, 1841, aged 68.

Inaugurated at Washington, March 4th, 1841.

JOHN TYLER, VICE-PRESIDENT.

Secretary of State—Daniel Webster, Massachusetts.

Secretary of Treasury—Thomas Ewing, Ohio.

Secretary of War—John Bell, Tennessee.

Secretary of Navy—George E. Badger, North Carolina.

Post-Master General—Francis Granger, New York.

Attorney-General—John J. Crittenden, Kentucky.

Inauguration—Sudden Death of Harrison.

1. *What is said of General Harrison?*

He had been somewhat distinguished in his political life, but more so for his military services. He was inaugurated on the 4th of March, and died on the fourth of April, just one month after his inauguration. He was the first President of the United States that died in office.

2. *What is related respecting the election of Harrison?*

General Harrison was the candidate of the Whigs, and Mr. Van Buren of the Democrats; and the electioneering contest was carried on with an earnestness and enthusiasm never before witnessed in this country. Of the two hundred and ninety-four electoral votes given for President, Harrison received two hundred and thirty-four; John Tyler received the same number of votes for Vice-President.

3. *On the death of Harrison, who became officers of Government?*

JOHN TYLER, VIRGINIA, TENTH PRESIDENT.

Born, 1789.

Assumed the Government, April 4th, 1841; Retired, March 4th, 1845.

Secretaries of State—Abel P. Upshur, Virginia; John C. Calhoun, South Carolina.*Secretaries of Treasury*—Walter Forward, Pennsylvania; John C. Spencer, New York; George M. Bibb, Kentucky.*Secretaries of War*—John C. Spencer, New York; James M. Porter, Pennsylvania; William Watkins, Pennsylvania.*Secretaries of Navy*—Abel P. Upshur, Virginia; David Henshaw, Massachusetts; Thomas W. Gilmer, Virginia; John T. Mason, Virginia.*Post-Master General*—Charles A. Wickliffe, Kentucky.*Attorneys-General*—Hugh S. Legare, South Carolina; John Nelson, Maryland; John T. Mason, Virginia.4. *What is said of President Tyler?*

He refused, upon constitutional scruples, to carry out the principles of the party by which he was elected.

Vetoed the Fiscal Bank, 1842.

5. *What acts were passed by Congress during an Extra Session?*

On the 31st of May, 1841, Congress met in an extra session, which had been called by President Harrison, and, besides other acts, repealed the Sub-Treasury Bill, and passed two different bills, establishing a FISCAL BANK, or Fiscal Corporation of the United States.

6. *What course was taken by the President?*

He vetoed both these bills.

7. *What was the consequence?*

The action of the President, in relation to their favorite measure, caused much excitement. All the members of the Cabinet resigned, with the exception of the Secretary of State, Mr. Webster, who retained the office, until the settlement of

the difficulties between the United States and England, in relation to the North-Eastern boundary.

Bankrupt Bill, 1841.

8. *When was the Bankrupt Bill passed, and why repealed?*

The commercial distress had become so universal, and failures so numerous, that a bankrupt law was passed on the 6th of August, 1841. The object of the bill was to relieve bankrupts and debtors, by cancelling their debts, and relinquishing the claims of creditors. The objects of the bill were so perverted and abused, that it was repealed in 1845.

Troubles in Rhode Island, 1841.

9. *Describe the troubles in Rhode Island.*

The government of Rhode Island had all along been acting under its ancient charter, granted by Charles II. In 1841, a Convention was called to alter the charter, and to frame a State Constitution. The charter required that every voter should have a freehold estate, valued at \$135. Those qualified to vote, under the requisition, elected their delegates, who met at the appointed time, and framed a Constitution. This was submitted to the people, and rejected by a small majority.

10. *Who were the "Suffrage party," and what did they do?*

The "Suffrage party," were for giving every man the right to vote, without regard to the property qualification required in the charter. They held a meeting, and framed what was called the "People's Constitution," which was duly ratified in the manner provided by themselves.

11. *What was next done?*

The "Suffrage party" chose Thomas W. Dorr, Governor, and elected a Legislature. The "Law and Order party," as it was called, elected Samuel W. King, Governor, and resisted the proceedings of Dorr and his supporters.

12. *What followed?*

Great excitement ensued, and a bloody struggle seemed at hand. The arrest of Dorr being ordered, he fled the State; but returning in May, 1843, he entrenched himself with about seven hundred men on a hill in Chapachet, with five pieces of artillery. A large force was called out, his men deserted him, and he was taken, tried, and convicted of treason. A new Constitution was afterward adopted, and Dorr, who had been sent to the State Prison, was released in 1845, after consenting to take the oath of allegiance.

The Tariff of 1842.

13. *What law was enacted in 1842?*

In 1842, a new Tariff law was enacted, which made a provision for the public revenue, and afforded protection to American manufactures, and other branches of national industry. This was a favorite measure of the Whig party.

North-Eastern Boundary Settled.

14. *What is said respecting the North-Eastern boundary of the United States?*

The North-Eastern Boundary, between the State of Maine and the British provinces of Canada and New Brunswick, had been for some years a subject of negotiation and controversy. At length it threatened to become a cause of national dispute

15. *When and how was the matter adjusted?*

The difficulty was amicably adjusted by the treaty at Washington, concluded in September, 1842, by Lord Ashburton and Daniel Webster.

Annexation of Texas, 1845.

16. *What was one of the last measures of Mr. Tyler's administration?*

One of the last acts of Mr. Tyler's Administration was the annexation of the Republic of Texas to the United States—

measure which was greatly promoted by the exertions of John C. Calhoun, the Secretary of State, and which excited a very spirited controversy.

17. *How was Texas annexed, and by what vote?*

Joint resolutions for the annexation of that Republic to the United States, as one of the States of the Union, passed the House of Representatives on the 25th of January, 1845, by a vote of 120 to 98, and the Senate on the 1st of March, by a vote of 27 to 25; and on the same day, the resolutions were approved by the President.

Exploring Expedition.

18. *What is said of Lieutenant Wilkes's Exploring Expedition?*

After the return of Lieutenant Wilkes from his Exploring Expedition, which had occupied the space of three years, Congress provided for the publication of his accounts. He brought with him two hundred sketches of natural scenery, two hundred portraits, and two thousand specimens of birds, besides a quantity of shells, fishes, animals, insects, &c. The collection has been made the foundation of a National Museum at Washington.

CHAPTER XXIV.

JAMES K. POLK'S ADMINISTRATION—1845-1849.

Officers of Government.

JAMES K. POLK, TENNESSEE, ELEVENTH PRESIDENT.

Born, in North Carolina, Nov. 2, 1795; Died, June 15, 1849, aged 53.
Inaugurated at Washington, March 4th, 1845; retired, March 3d, 1849.

GEORGE M. DALLAS, VICE-PRESIDENT, Pennsylvania.

Secretary of State—James Buchanan, Pennsylvania.

Secretary of Treasury—Robert J. Walker, Mississippi.

Secretary of War—William L. Marcy, New York.

Secretaries of the Navy—George Bancroft, Massachusetts; John Y. Mason, Virginia.

Post-Master General—Cave Johnson, Tennessee.

Attorneys-General—John Y. Mason, Virginia; Nathan Clifford, Maine; Isaac Toucey, Connecticut.

The Election.

1. *By whom was Mr. Tyler succeeded?*

In 1845, Mr. Tyler was succeeded by James Knox Polk.

2. *What is said of the Election?*

Mr. Polk was the Democratic candidate; and after a very exciting electioneering contest, he received one hundred and seventy electoral votes for President—Henry Clay, the Whig candidate, receiving one hundred and five votes.

Annexation of Texas—North-western Boundary.

3. *What measures were strongly favored by the party which supported Mr. Polk?*

The party by which Mr. Polk was supported, took strong ground in favor of the annexation of Texas, and of the claim of the United States to the whole of Oregon Territory.

4. *What course did the President take?*

Mr. Polk, in his inaugural address, sustained the views of his party on both these questions.

5. *What is said of the North-Western Boundary?*

The settlement of the North-Western Boundary between the United States and the North American territories of Great Britain, involving the claims of both parties to the Territory of Oregon, had long been a subject of negotiation; and it now assumed a threatening aspect.

6. *How was the matter adjusted?*

But it was happily adjusted by a treaty concluded at Washington, in June, 1846, fixing on the 49° of North latitude as the Boundary line.

Tariff of 1846.

7. *What Tariff law was passed on the President's recommendation?*

On the recommendation of the President, Congress passed a law in the month of July, 1846, having a view to the interests of the public revenue, and withdrawing, in a great measure, the favor granted to domestic manufactures by the tariff law of 1842.

Mexican War.

8. *What was the cause of the Mexican war?*

The war with Mexico grew out of the annexation of Texas to the United States.

9. *What is related respecting Texas?*

Texas, which was previously a territory of Mexico, declared its independence in 1836; and from that time, it had maintained a separate Republican government; but its independence had not been acknowledged by Mexico.

Troops ordered to the Rio Grande, 1845.

10 *What was done by the Mexican Minister?*

In March, 1845, immediately after the passing of resolutions by Congress, in favor of the annexation, General Almonte, the Mexican Minister to the United States, remonstrated against these resolutions, and demanded his passports; and all the diplomatic intercourse between the governments was now broken off.

11. *What is said of the Boundaries of Texas?*

The boundaries of Texas were never definitely settled.

12. *What were the boundaries contended for by the different parties?*

The governments of the United States and Texas contended that the South-Western boundary of that territory was formed by the Rio Grande; but the Mexicans contended that the boundary was formed by the river Neuces.

13. *What took place on the disputed Territory?*

The country between these two rivers was disputed Territory, both parties claiming it; it was on this disputed Territory that hostilities were commenced, and each party charged the other with being the aggressor.

14. *What was done by the Legislature of Texas in 1845?*

In July, 1845, the Legislature of Texas ratified the resolutions of Congress, by which that Republic was annexed to the United States, and requested President Polk to take measures for the defense of the territory against an apprehended attack from Mexico.

15. *What was afterward done?*

An American squadron was dispatched to the Gulf of Mexico; and General Zachary Taylor was ordered to proceed to the Southern frontier of Texas, with a sufficient force for its defense.

16. *Where was General Taylor with his army, in March, 1846?*

In Sept., 1845, General Taylor had concentrated an army

of about four thousand men at Corpus Christi. Having received orders from the United States government to proceed through the territory to the Rio Grande, he took a position on the left bank of that river, opposite to Matamoras, where he erected a fort. On the 25th of March, he established a depot of supplies at Point Isabel, upward of twenty miles in his rear, near the coast.

17. *What is said of the Mexican force which was assembled?*

The Mexican forces, of about eight thousand men, were soon assembled on the banks of the Rio Grande, at and near Matamoras, under the command of Generals Ampudia and Arista. They declared the advance of General Taylor with his army to be a hostile movement.

18. *What was done by General Arista, on the 24th of April?*

On the 24th of April, General Arista informed General Taylor that "he considered hostilities commenced, and that he would prosecute them."

Captain Thornton's Dragoons Surprised and Captured.

19. *What took place on the same day?*

On the same day, a company of sixty-three American Dragoons, under Captain Thornton, who had been dispatched to reconnoitre, was surprised by a large Mexican force, sixteen being killed and wounded, and the rest taken prisoners.

20. *What was done a few days afterward by the Mexicans, and by General Taylor?*

A few days after, a part of the Mexican forces crossed the river; and General Taylor, being informed that they intended to attack Point Isabel, where his military stores were deposited, marched to the relief of that place.

21. *What movement did he next make?*

The garrison having been strengthened by a reinforcement of five hundred sailors and marines, and the American squadron in the Gulf of Mexico, he began on the 7th of May to retrace his steps to the Rio Grande.

Battle of Palo Alto, May 8th, and Resaca de la Palma, May 9th, 1846.

22. *What is related of the battle of Palo Alto, May 8th, 1846?*

The next day, General Taylor met the Mexican army, of six thousand men, at Palo Alto, and after an action of five hours, drove them from the field, with the loss of nearly four hundred, including the wounded.

23. *What was the loss of the Americans?*

The Americans, whose number was about two thousand three hundred, lost about fifty in killed and wounded, among whom was Major Ringgold.

24. *What took place on the following day, May 9th, 1846?*

The American army again met the Mexicans, strongly posted at Resaca de la Palma, and completely routed them, killing about six hundred men, and taking a large number of prisoners, among whom was General La Vega.

25. *What next followed?*

A few days after this battle, General Taylor crossed the Rio Grande, and took possession of Matamoras, which had been deserted by the Mexican troops.

War Declared, May 11, 1846.

26. *What is said of the effect produced by the news of Captain Thornton's disaster?*

Early in May, the news of Captain Thornton's disaster reached Washington, accompanied by exaggerated statements of the perils to which General Taylor's army was exposed, and produced great excitement.

27. *What course did the President take?*

The President, in a special message, on the 11th of May, announced to Congress, then in session, that the Mexicans "had invaded our territory and shed the blood of our fellow-citizens on our own soil."

28. *What did Congress do?*

Congress declared that by the act of the Republic of Mexico, war existed between that government and the United States; and, at the same time, authorized the President to accept the services of twenty-five thousand volunteers for twelve months, and appropriated \$10,000,000 for the war.

29. *How was General Taylor's force increased?*

General Taylor's force was soon after increased by a large number of volunteers from Texas and the adjacent States.

Storming of Monterey, September 21, 1846.

30. *Against what place did General Taylor next proceed?*

After three months' preparation, Taylor, with an army of between six and seven thousand men, proceeded to attack the strongly fortified city of Monterey, the capital of the State of New Leon, which was garrisoned by about ten thousand Mexican troops, commanded by General Ampudia.

31. *When was the city assaulted?*

The American army reached Monterey on the 19th of September, 1846, and on the 21st assaulted it, with a view of taking it by storm; and after a severe and sanguinary struggle of three days, they became masters of the principal defenses and the greater part of the city.

32. *What was the result?*

On the 24th, General Ampudia proposed terms of capitulation, which were accepted, and the Mexican army evacuated Monterey. At the same time General Taylor agreed to an armistice of eight weeks, or until instructions to renew hos-

tilities should be received from either of the respective governments.

Santa Anna Proclaimed Dictator.

33. *What is related respecting General Santa Anna?*

While these events were taking place near the Rio Grande, General Santa Anna, Ex-President of Mexico, returned from exile, and overthrew the government of President Parades, who was at the head of the party supposed to be most in favor of prosecuting the war with the United States.

34. *What course was he expected to take?*

It was supposed by the American government, that the influence of Santa Anna, on his return to power, would be exerted in favor of peace.

35. *What was done, and what was the consequence?*

The President, under this belief, gave orders to the naval commander in the Gulf of Mexico, to throw no obstacle in the way of Santa Anna's return. But these expectations proved to be ill-founded; and under his administration, the Mexicans were roused to greater efforts than they had hitherto made to repel their invaders.

Capture of the Territory of New Mexico, August 18, 1846.

36. *What expedition was conducted by General Kearney?*

Besides the invasion of Mexico by the armies commanded by Generals Taylor and Scott, another was conducted by General Kearney, who, in the latter part of June, 1846, set out from Missouri, at the head of six hundred men, mostly volunteers from that State, for the purpose of conquering New Mexico.

37. *What is said of his march and conquest?*

After a fatiguing march of about one thousand miles across the prairies, General Kearney arrived at Santa Fe, of which he took possession, without opposition, on the 18th of August.

38. *What measures did he then adopt?*

He immediately declared himself Governor of New Mexico; and issued a proclamation, absolving the people from their allegiance to the Mexican government, and constituting them citizens of the United States.

Doniphan's Expedition, December, 1846.

39. *What is related of Colonel Doniphan?*

In December, 1846, Colonel Doniphan, a volunteer from Missouri, departed from Santa Fe, at the head of nine hundred men, to invade the Mexican State of Chihuahua.

40. *What is said of the contest at Bracito?*

At Bracito, on the Rio Grande, a division of his force, five hundred in number, encountered twelve hundred Mexicans, whom they put to flight, with the loss of about three hundred in killed and wounded; while the Americans had none killed, and only seven wounded.

41. *What took place at the pass of Sacramento?*

Two months later, in February, 1847, at the Pass of Sacramento, Colonel Doniphan's little army met and defeated four thousand Mexicans, commanded by the Governor of the State, and occupying a strong position defended by heavy artillery. On the following day, March 1st, they took possession of the important city of Chihuahua.

Fremont's Expedition, 1846.

42. *What is related respecting Colonel Fremont?*

In the summer of 1846, Colonel Fremont, who with a party of about sixty men, was exploring California by order of the President of the United States, became involved in hostilities with the Mexican Governor of that province. With the aid of a few American settlers, Fremont defeated the Mexican forces, which were much superior in number.

43. *What did he do, when he heard of the existence of war with Mexico?*

He raised the American flag, and, in conjunction with Commodore Stockton, who commanded the United States fleet in the Pacific, prosecuted the conquest of the country with such success that, by the end of August, the whole of California was in possession of the Americans.

Vera Cruz.

44. *What did the American government now resolve to do?*

The American government resolved to strike a decisive blow, by attacking Vera Cruz, the principal Mexican fort and fortress, hoping thereby to gain access to the heart of the country, and of the capital, and thus "conquer a peace."

45. *Who was appointed to the chief command?*

General Winfield Scott was ordered to take command of all the American forces in Mexico, and to conduct the expedition against Vera Cruz.

46. *What is said of the armistice concluded by General Taylor?*

The armistice which General Taylor had concluded at Monterey, was not approved of by the authorities at Washington.

47. *What then followed?*

In November, his army resumed offensive operations, and speedily overran and subdued the provinces of Cohahuila and Tamaulipas.

48. *What was done by General Scott?*

About this time, General Scott arrived at the seat of war, and withdrew from General Taylor the greater part of his army, including nearly all the regular troops. These he added to the army about to assault Vera Cruz.

Battle of Buena Vista, February 22d, 1847.

49. *On what day did the battle of Buena Vista commence?*

The battle commenced on the 22d of February, Washington's birth-day, and raged all that day and the next. The American war-cry was, "The memory of Washington."

50. *What was the position of General Taylor's army?*

Taylor took a very strong and commanding position, at a pass in the mountains called La Angostura, not very far from a settlement called Buena Vista. The pass was so narrow, that a few men could defend it against a very large force.

51. *What were the relative forces of the two armies?*

The aggregate force of the American army was only about five thousand men, of which only five hundred were regulars; while the Mexican army consisted of twenty thousand men, under General Santa Anna.

52. *To the invitation given by Santa Anna to surrender within an hour, what was the answer returned by one of General Taylor's officers?*

"Return our compliments to Santa Anna, and inform him that General Taylor never surrenders."

53. *Describe the battle.*

Early on the following morning, a terrible conflict commenced; it was desperate and bloody, and continued till sunset. Several times the overwhelming forces of the Mexicans seemed ready to crush the little band of the Americans; and finally Santa Anna made a desperate attack on the American centre, commanded by Taylor in person. It stood like a rock against a billow; and although Taylor stood all day in the thickest of the fight, he escaped with only a bullet through his coat. Captain Bragg's artillery did fearful execution. As the enemy for the first time began to waver, Taylor was heard to exclaim, "Give them a little more grape, Captain Bragg." The order was obeyed—the Mexicans fled in confusion—and the Americans were masters of the bloody field.

54. *What were the losses of the two armies?*

The American loss in this battle was seven hundred and twenty-three in killed and wounded; and that of the Mexicans amounted to about two thousand.

55. *What were the results of this victory?*

It left the Americans in full possession of all the North-Eastern country. Six months later, Taylor sent a large number of his men to act elsewhere; then leaving General Wool in command, he returned to the United States, where he was received with the greatest enthusiasm.

Capture of Vera Cruz, 29th March, 1847.

56. *What is related of General Scott's attack on Vera Cruz?*

On the 9th of March, 1847, General Scott landed near Vera Cruz, with an army of about twelve thousand men. The city was immediately invested; and, after a furious bombardment of several days, the Mexican commander, on the 29th, capitulated, and surrendered the city, together with the famous fortress of San Juan de Ulloa, besides five thousand prisoners and four hundred pieces of artillery.

Storming of Cerro Gordo, 18th April, 1847.

57. *What took place early in April?*

Early in April, the American army commenced its march from Vera Cruz to the city of Mexico. At the mountain pass of Cerro Gordo, about fifty miles from Vera Cruz, it encountered the Mexicans, commanded by President Santa Anna, consisting of from twelve to fifteen thousand men, strongly intrenched in an almost impregnable position.

58. *Describe the assault of the Americans.*

On the 18th of April, the Americans, who numbered eight thousand five hundred, began the assault; and, in a few hours, carried by storm all the intrenchments and fortresses of the

Mexicans. They fled in confusion, leaving in the hands of the victors about three thousand prisoners, four or five thousand stands of arms, and forty-three pieces of artillery.

59. *What were the respective losses?*

Among the Mexican prisoners were five generals, one of whom was La Vega, who had been before captured in the battle of Resaca de la Palma. The American loss in this engagement was four hundred and thirty-one in killed and wounded; the Mexicans lost about three times as many.

60. *By what was the victory of Cerro Gordo followed?*

It was followed by the immediate surrender of the city of Jalapa, and the strong fortress of Perote; and on the 15th of May, the Americans entered Puebla, the most important city of Mexico next to the Capital.

61. *What was the state of the army?*

Here, the army, which had been diminished by death, sickness, and the departure of volunteers, to about five thousand effective men, remained for nearly three months, awaiting reinforcements and supplies.

62. *What took place on the 7th of August, 1847?*

Reinforcements having arrived, General Scott commenced his march from Puebla to the city of Mexico, at the head of about eleven thousand men. On the 18th, the army reached the hamlet of San Augustine, ten miles south of the Capital.

Battles of Contreras and Churubusco, August 20, 1847.

63. *What took place on the 20th?*

Two sanguinary battles were fought with the Mexican forces of about thirty thousand men, who were stationed within and around the strongly fortified posts which commanded the entrance into the city. In the first battle, that of Contreras, four thousand five hundred Americans assaulted, and in less than twenty minutes, drove from their intrenchments, seven thousand Mexicans, killing seven hundred, and taking eight hun-

dred and thirty prisoners, besides many standards and colors, and many pieces of artillery.

64. *Describe the battle of Churubusco.*

In the second battle, viz.: that of Churubusco, the disparity of the forces was still greater, and the Mexican loss still more severe.

65. *What was the effect of these victories?*

These rapid and decisive victories caused such consternation among the Mexicans, that General Scott might at once have forced his way into the city; but he forbore doing so, not wishing to drive the people to desperation, and to use his own words, "willing to leave something to the Republic on which to rest her pride and recover her temper."

An Armistice agreed upon, August 23, 1847.

66. *What course was then adopted?*

General Scott acceded to a request made by General Santa Anna for an armistice, the terms of which were agreed upon, and signed on the 23d of August.

67. *What is said of Mr. Trist, and what was done by him?*

Mr. Nicholas Trist, a commissioner appointed by the United States, had arrived in Mexico some time before, and was now in General Scott's camp. Negotiations for peace were immediately commenced by him, and commissioners were appointed by the two governments.

68. *What was the result, and what followed?*

As the terms proposed were not satisfactory, and the Mexican officers were violating the stipulations of the armistice, by erecting and strengthening fortifications, General Scott recommenced hostilities on the 7th of September.

Capture of the City of Mexico, September 14, 1847.

69. *What military operations took place on the following day?*

On the following day, a division of the American army, three thousand two hundred in number, commanded by General Worth, carried by storm the strong position of El Molino de Rey, which was held by about fourteen thousand Mexicans under President Santa Anna.

70. *What was the loss on each side?*

The Mexican loss in this action, which was perhaps the most fiercely contested of the whole war, amounted to three thousand, in killed, wounded, and captured. The Americans lost, in killed and wounded, about eight hundred, nearly one quarter of the number engaged.

71. *What is said of the storming of the fortress of Chapultepec?*

Five days afterward, the fortress of Chapultepec, situated on a steep, rocky hill, one hundred and fifty feet in height, was stormed. The force supporting it, being routed and driven into the city, were followed by the victorious Americans, and by nightfall one division of our army was within the gates of the city of Mexico, while another occupied the suburbs.

72. *What was done by the Mexicans and Americans?*

During the night, the shattered remnant of the Mexican army, and the members of government, fled from the city. On the next day, September 14, 1847, the Americans took possession of it.

73. *What was the total loss of General Scott's army in the battles of Mexico?*

The loss of General Scott's army, in these battles, amounted to about two thousand seven hundred men, in killed and wounded.

74. *What was the number of the American troops that took the city of Mexico?*

The number of American troops that entered and took possession of this city, of one hundred and forty thousand inhabitants, was less than six thousand.

Peace with Mexico, February 2, 1848.

75. *What was done soon after the conquest of Mexico by General Scott?*

Soon after the conquest of the city, negotiations for peace began, which resulted in a treaty concluded on the 2d February, 1848, at the city of Guadalupe Hidalgo, and ratified with some modifications, by the American Senate, on the 10th of the following March.

76. *What provinces were ceded by Mexico to the United States?*

By this treaty Mexico ceded to the United States the provinces of New Mexico and Upper California, and agreed to accept the Rio Grande as the boundary between her territory and Texas.

77. *What does the territory thus acquired amount to?*

The territory acquired from Mexico by this treaty, including Texas, as well as New Mexico and California, amounts to nearly two million square miles.

78. *What sum did the United States agree to pay Mexico?*

The United States agreed to pay Mexico \$15,000,000, and to assume the debts due to citizens of the United States by the Mexican government, to the amount of \$3,500,000.

Discovery of Gold in California.

79. *What is said of the discovery of gold mines?*

Soon after the acquisition of California, important gold mines were discovered on the Sacramento, which have been found to extend over a large tract of country, exceeding in the richness of its gold mines any other part of the world.

80. *Besides the war with Mexico, repeat the distinguishing events of Mr. Polk's administration?*

The settlement of the Oregon question in 1846; the establishment of an Independent Treasury system, by which the national revenues are collected in gold or silver, without the aid of Banks; and the revision of the Tariff laws, by which protection to American manufacturers was lessened. During the last year of his administration, 1848, Wisconsin was admitted as the thirtieth of the United States.

CHAPTER XXV.

TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION—1849.

Officers of Government.

ZACHARY TAYLOR, VIRGINIA, TWELFTH PRESIDENT.

Born, Nov. 24, 1784; Died, July 9th, 1850.

Inaugurated, March 5, 1849.

Secretary of State—John M. Clayton, Delaware.

Secretary of Treasury—William M. Meredith, Pennsylvania.

Secretary of Home Department—Thomas Ewing, Ohio.

Secretary of War—George H. Crawford, Georgia.

Secretary of Navy—Wm. B. Preston, Virginia.

Post-Master General—Jacob Collamer, Vermont.

Attorney-General—Reverdy Johnson, Maryland.

The Election

1. *When were the new President and Vice-President elected?*

In the fall of 1848, General Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana, was elected President, and Millard Fillmore of New York, Vice President.

2. *Who were the other candidates?*

Lewis Cass, of Michigan, and General William Butler, of Kentucky, were the administration candidates. Martin Van Buren, of New York, and Charles Francis Adams, of Massachusetts, were the "Free Soil" candidates.

3. *What was the character of General Taylor's Inaugural address?*

The inaugural address was a mild, conciliatory paper. From its spirit, the majority inferred that the administration would pursue a policy of moderation.

Excitement on the Slave Question—California, &c.

4. *What question caused an intense excitement?*

The excitement upon the question of slavery in the Territories, was at a point which threatened the dissolution of the Union. The subject was introduced into every debate, and no important public business could be transacted.

5. *What State applied for admission into the Union?*

The citizens of California, having adopted a State Constitution, had applied for admission into the Union.

6. *Why was an opposition made, and by whom?*

In the declaration of rights prefixed to the Constitution of California, slavery was prohibited in that State. This excited the opposition of many of the Southern members.

7. *What Territories were anxious for government?*

New Mexico and the Mormon region of Utah, were anxious for territorial governments, and a large number of members of Congress from the Free States desired to prohibit the institution of slavery in these Territories, which were then free.

8. *What was proposed in the Senate?*

In the midst of continued excitement, a number of distinguished Senators proposed that a series of compromise measures should be adopted.

9. *What measures were accordingly adopted?*

A special committee of thirteen Senators was appointed, Henry Clay, of Kentucky, being named chairman.

10. *What did this special committee report?*

They reported a bill, providing for the admission of California into the Union; giving territorial governments to New Mexico and Utah; abolishing the buying and selling of slaves in the District of Columbia; providing for the rendition of fugitive slaves, and for the payment to Texas of \$10,000,000, to relinquish her claim upon New Mexico.

11. *What is said of the discussions upon this report?*

These measures were under discussion in the Senate, for several months, and each side presented a splendid array of talent.

12. *What was the position of the administration?*

The administration was opposed to the compromise, and in favor of admitting California, independent of all other measures.

13. *What great orator and statesman died on the 31st of March?*

On the 31st of March, 1850, John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, died at Washington.

Cuban Expedition.

14. *What occurred in the spring of 1850?*

In the spring of 1850, an expedition was prepared by numerous citizens of the United States, with the object of revolutionizing the island of Cuba. In the latter part of April, about four hundred and fifty men, under the command of General Narcisso Lopez, in defiance of a proclamation by President Taylor, announcing a determination to put all violators of the neutral law beyond the pale of governmental protection, sailed from New Orleans, and reaching Cuba, effected a landing at the port of Cardenas.

15. *What was the result of the expedition?*

They fought several severe battles with the Spanish troops, and defeated them ; but the inhabitants refused to join him, and after holding Cardenas, only a day, they abandoned the object of the expedition, and sailed back to the United States. The attempt was rash, and in violation of the laws of nations. The leaders were arrested in the Southern States, but not prosecuted, for the want of evidence.

16. *When did General Taylor die?*

President Taylor expired, after a brief illness, on the 9th of July, 1850.

FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION—1850.

Officers of Government.

MILLARD FILLMORE, NEW YORK, THIRTEENTH PRESIDENT.

Born, January 7th, 1800.

Assumed the Government, July 10th, 1850 ; retired, March 3d, 1853.

Secretary of State—Daniel Webster, Massachusetts.

Secretary of Treasury—Thomas Corwin, Ohio.

Secretary of War—Charles M. Conrad, Louisiana.

Secretary of Navy—William A. Graham, N. C. ; John P. Kennedy, Md.

Secretary of Home Department—Alexander H. H. Stuart, Va.

Post-Master General—Nathan K. Hall, N. Y. ; Samuel D. Hubbard, Con.

Compromise Measure, 1850.

17. *When were the Compromise Measures adopted?*

In the latter part of August, the compromise measures were passed separately by Congress, and were immediately sanctioned by the President.

Treaties with Britain, France, Spain, and Portugal.

18. *What difficulties had occurred in the foreign relations?*

During President Taylor's administration, difficulties had

occurred with Great Britain, France, Spain, and Portugal. These were now amicably adjusted.

19. *What was secured by a treaty with Great Britain?*

Mutual right of way across the country of Central America was secured by treaty, to Great Britain and the United States.

20. *How were the French and Spanish difficulties settled?*

The difficulty with France was settled by the removal of M. Poussin, the minister at Washington, and that which had arisen between Spain and the United States, in relation to the Cuban expedition, was appeased.

21. *How was the Portuguese difficulty settled?*

The difficulty which had arisen between the United States and Portugal, in consequence of the refusal of the latter to indemnify the United States for the destruction of an American privateer, Gen. Armstrong, in a Portuguese port, was submitted to the arbitration of President Bonaparte of France, who decided in favor of Portugal.

Controversy about Hungary, 1849.

22. *What was the subject of a correspondence between Secretary Webster and Chevalier Hulseman?*

During the Hungarian struggle for independence in 1849, the Government of the United States had sent an agent to Hungary, to ascertain the precise state of affairs, preparatory to a recognition of its independence. A correspondence concerning this agency, arose between Mr. Webster and the Austrian Minister, Hulseman.

Narcisso Lopez's attempt on Cuba, 1851.

23. *What occurred in the spring of 1851?*

In the spring of 1851, another attempt was made to revolutionize Cuba.

24. *Where was the expedition prepared, and who commanded it?*

The expedition was prepared in different parts of the United States, and was commanded by General Narcisso Lopez.

25. *What did President Fillmore do?*

President Fillmore, following the example of his predecessor in office, issued a proclamation, declaring those as outlaws, who took part in the expedition.

26. *Where did Lopez land?*

Proceeding to Cuba, Lopez and his party landed at Bahia Honda.

27. *With what success did he meet?*

The invaders, for a time, contended successfully with the Spanish troops, but they could not obtain the support of the people, and supplies were accordingly wanting.

28. *What became of Col. Crittenden and his party?*

Soon after Lopez had departed into the interior of the island, Col Crittenden's detachment of sixty men was attacked by a greatly superior force of the enemy, and compelled to take to their boats.

29. *What became of these boats?*

These boats, with the Colonel and fifty-two men, were captured by the Spanish frigate Pizarro, and taken to Havana, where the whole party was shot.

30. *What became of the main body under Lopez?*

In the meantime, the main body of the invaders was attacked, and compelled to disperse among the mountains; Lopez, and about a hundred of his men, were made prisoners and taken to Havana; many of them were shot, while Lopez himself, as a chief mark of infamy, was publicly executed by the garrote at Havana.

31. *What became of the other prisoners?*

The other prisoners were sent to Spain, where the Queen, with commendable moderation, reprimanded them and set them free.

Deaths of Clay, Webster, Calhoun.

32. *During the administration of Fillmore, what two distinguished statesmen died?*

On the 29th June, 1852, Henry Clay died at Washington aged 75; and on the subsequent October 24th, Daniel Webster, at the time Secretary of State, expired at Marshfield, Massachusetts, aged 70. On the 31st of March, 1850, their compeer John C. Calhoun, had died at Washington, in his 68th year. At their deaths, party feeling was drowned in the sincere tears shed over their graves, and the entire nation was palled in gloom, that three such lights had set forever.

The Tri-partite Treaty.

33. *Who succeeded Mr. Webster as Secretary of State?*

Edward Everett, of Massachusetts, was appointed to succeed him in office.

34. *What did Lord John Russell propose about this time?*

In consequence of the anxiety felt in Spain at the expedition designed to revolutionize Cuba, Lord John Russell, the British Minister of Foreign Affairs, proposed that Great Britain, France, and the United States, should enter into a Tri-partite Treaty, securing Cuba to Spain forever.

35. *How did Secretary Everett regard the proposal?*

This proposal was declined by Mr. Everett, in a letter remarkable for its defense of the American progressive policy.

36. *What subsequently occurred?*

Lord Russell made an informal reply to this able letter, but it was not published until Mr. Everett had retired from office. With the approbation, however, of the Secretary of State of the new administration, he published a rejoinder, completely overthrowing all the arguments and assertions of the British Minister.

37. *When did Mr. Fillmore's administration terminate?*

Mr. Fillmore's administration terminated on the 3d of March, 1853. He was succeeded in office by Franklin Pierce.

CHAPTER XXVI.

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.

Officers of Government.

FRANKLIN PIERCE, NEW HAMPSHIRE, FOURTEENTH PRESIDENT.

Born, New Hampshire, 1804.

Inaugurated March 4th, 1853; Retired, March 3d, 1857.

WILLIAM R. King, ALABAMA, VICE-PRESIDENT.

Secretary of State—William L. Marcy, New York.

Secretary of Treasury—James Guthrie, Kentucky.

Secretary of Interior—Robert McLelland, Michigan.

Secretary of War—Jefferson Davis, Mississippi.

Secretary of Navy—James C. Dobbin, North Carolina.

Attorney-General—Caleb Cushing, Massachusetts.

Post-Master General—James Campbell, Pennsylvania.

The Election.

1. *What was the result of the Presidential election of 1852?*

The election of Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, as President, and William R. King, of Alabama, as Vice-President.

2. *What is said of the health of Mr. King?*

Bad health compelled him to leave the country before the oath of office could be administered. He went to Cuba, remained a few months, and died, April 18, 1853, soon after his return to his estate in Alabama, at the age of 68 years.

Mexican Boundary Line.*3. What difficulty did the President first encounter?*

The earliest serious difficulty the President was called upon to encounter, was a dispute concerning the boundary line between the Mexican province of Chihuahua and New Mexico. The dispute was finally settled by negotiation.

Pacific Rail-Road.*4. What plan was being matured about this time?*

Plans for the construction of one or more rail-roads from the Mississippi Valley, across the continent, to the Pacific coast. For this purpose Congress authorized surveys, and by midsummer, 1853, four expeditions were fitted out to explore as many different routes.

Kosztá affair.*5. Describe the Kosztá affair?*

A Hungarian refugee, named Martin Kosztá, had taken legal measures to become a citizen of the United States. While engaged in business at Smyrna, he was seized and taken on board an Austrian brig, to be conveyed to Trieste, as a rebel refugee, notwithstanding he carried an American protection.

6. What prompt measures were taken by Captain Ingraham?

Captain Ingraham, of the United States sloop-of-war St. Louis, then lying in the harbor of Smyrna, immediately claimed Kosztá as an American citizen. On the refusal of the Austrian authorities to release the prisoner, Ingraham cleared his vessel for action, and threatened to fire upon the brig, if the prisoner was not given up. The Austrians yielded, and Kosztá returned to the United States. The conduct of Ingraham was highly applauded throughout the United States, and Congress voted him an elegant sword.

7. What treaties were in progress?

There were treaties in progress respecting boundaries and claims between the United States and their southern neighbors, Mexico and Central America; and the government of the Sandwich Islands wished annexation.

Nebraska and Kansas.

8. What bill caused discord in the Senate?

The Chairman of the Senate Committee on Territories, Mr. Douglas, presented a bill, January 1854, which disturbed the harmony and quietude of the people.

9. What did the bill propose?

It proposed to erect this vast region into two Territories—the Southern portion, below the 40th parallel, to be named Kansas; the Northern, and larger portion, Nebraska.

10. What absorbing question was excited in Congress at this time?

The question, relating to the territorial organization of that extensive tract, reaching from the western boundary of Missouri, Iowa, and Minnesota, to the Rocky Mountains, and from below Arkansas River to British America. The region lying north of latitude 36 deg. 30 min., had been cut off from slavery by the Missouri Compromise.

11. What bill did Senator Douglas present in January, 1854?

A bill for the organization of this region into two new Territories, to be known as Kansas and Nebraska; with the proviso that the Missouri Compromise should not apply to them, inasmuch as it had been superseded by the compromise measures of 1850. In May, 1854, Mr. Douglas's bill having passed both Houses of Congress, and received the President's signature, became a law.

Popular Sovereignty—Kansas Difficulty.

12. What efforts were now made in the North and South in respect to Kansas?

Both these regions now began to encourage emigration, in order that Kansas, when admitted as a State, might have a majority of settlers in favor of their respective views.

13. *When was the first election held in Kansas, for a delegate to Congress?*

In November, 1854; it resulted in the triumph of the Pro-Slavery party.

14. *What followed?*

The Pro-Slavery party also elected a large majority to the Legislature, which proceeded to draw up a code of laws for the government of the Territory. Against this code the Anti Slavery party protested.

15. *What did they do in consequence?*

They met in convention at Topeka, drew up a constitution, and, under it, elected State officers and a new Legislature.

16. *What resulted?*

Two sets of authorities were established, each acting against the other. Civil war resulted, outrages of every kind were committed, and neither life nor property was safe; nor was peace restored until the President, on the 3d of September, 1856, sent John W. Geary, of Pennsylvania, as Governor of Kansas, with full military powers to suppress the insurrection.

Difficulties with Spain.

17. *What new difficulties now arose with the Spanish authorities in Cuba?*

Under cover of a shallow pretense, the American steamship Black Warrior was seized in the harbor of Havana, February 28th, 1854. The vessel and cargo were declared confiscated.

18. *What did the President do?*

The President sent a messenger to the government at Madrid, with instructions to the American minister to demand immediate redress.

19. *What did the Captain-General in the meanwhile do?*

In the meanwhile, the perpetrators of the outrage became alarmed; and the Captain-General, with pretended generosity, offered to give up the vessel and cargo, on the payment by the owners of a fine of six thousand dollars. They complied, but under protest.

20. *What Proclamation was issued by the President on the 1st of June, 1854?*

The President being informed that expeditions were preparing in the United States for the invasion of Cuba, issued a proclamation against such movements, and called upon citizens to respect the treaties between the United States and Spain.

21. *Who succeeded Mr. Pierce as President?*

James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, as President, and John C. Breckenridge, of Kentucky, as Vice-President.

CHAPTER XXVII.

BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION.

Officers of Government.

JAMES BUCHANAN, PENNSYLVANIA, FIFTEENTH PRESIDENT.

Born, Pennsylvania, 1791.

Inaugurated March 4th, 1857; Retired, March 3d, 1861.

JOHN C. BRECKINRIDGE, KENTUCKY, VICE-PRESIDENT.

Secretary of State—Lewis Cass, Michigan.

Secretaries of Treasury—John A. Dix, New York; Simon Cameron, Pennsylvania; J. S. Black, Pennsylvania.

Secretary of Interior—Jacob Thompson, Mississippi.

Secretary of War—John B. Floyd, Virginia.

Secretaries of Navy—Isaac Toucy, Connecticut; Gideon Welles, Connecticut.

Post-Masters General—Joseph Holt, Kentucky; M. Blair, Maryland.

Attorneys-General—Jeremiah S. Black, Pennsylvania; Edwin M. Stanton, Pennsylvania.

1. *By whom was Mr. Pierce succeeded?*

In 1857, Mr. Pierce was succeeded by James Buchanan.

2. *What is said of Mr. Buchanan?*

Mr. Buchanan was born in Pennsylvania, educated to the practice of the law, and after filling various offices of honor, was elected President of the United States in 1857.

3. *What was the first difficulty that the President had to encounter?*

The first difficulty the President had to encounter was the disastrous revulsion that took place in the mercantile world.

4. *What was his next difficulty?*

That of the defiant tone of the Mormons in Utah, who had compelled a United States Judge to adjourn his court at the point of the Bowie knife.

5. *What was done after that?*

The United States troops were in winter-quarters at Salt Lake City, the Mormons prepared for resistance, but commissioners having arrived with a pardon to those who would submit to Federal authority, the Mormon chiefs deemed it wise to come to terms.

6. *What new Commercial Treaty was formed in the summer of 1861?*

A Japanese Embassy arrived at New York, consisting of seventy-one persons, bringing with them a Treaty of Commerce between Japan and the United States, which was ratified by Congress.

7. *What States were admitted in the Union during Mr. Buchanan's administration?*

Minnesota in 1858, Oregon in 1859, and Kansas in 1861.

8. *Were they admitted as Free or Slave States?*

They were all admitted as Free States, though there was some struggle between the advocates of Freedom and Slavery in Kansas.

9. *What event happened in 1860?*

The election of Abraham Lincoln of Illinois to the Presidency and Hannibal Hamlin of Maine as Vice President.

10. *What effect had this election on the people of the Southern States?*

The people of the Southern States, claiming that Mr. Lincoln was a sectional candidate pledged to the overthrow of slavery, met in convention in Charleston, declared that the Union existing between South Carolina and other States, under the name of the "United States," was dissolved.

11. *What happened after South Carolina had seceded?*

In February, 1861, six other States seceded from the general government, viz.: Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas.

12. *Did the Senators and Representatives remain in their*

seats in Congress after the seven States above mentioned had seceded?

No; the Senators and Representatives retired from their seats in the Congress of the United States.

13. *What was done in Montgomery, Alabama, on the 4th of February, 1861?*

On the 4th of February, 1861, delegates from six of the seceded States met at Montgomery and formed a Union, under the title of the Confederate States of America.

14. *Who was elected Provisional President?*

The Hon. Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, formerly a member of Mr. Pierce's Cabinet, was selected as Provisional President.

15. *What was the condition of the Federal government at this time?*

The Federal government seemed paralyzed; there was a great deal of talk in Congress, a Peace Conference was held in Washington, but no decided action was taken to unite the dissatisfied States with the general government.

16. *What became of the forts and arsenals in the seceded States?*

The Confederates took possession of all forts and arsenals, guns and munitions of war.

17. *When did Mr. Buchanan retire from the office of President of the United States?*

Mr. Buchanan retired from office on the 4th of March, 1861.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION.

Officers of Government.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, ILLINOIS, SIXTEENTH PRESIDENT.

Born, Kentucky, 1809.

Inaugurated March 4th, 1861; Died, April 15th, 1865.

HANNIBAL HAMLIN, MAINE, VICE-PRESIDENT.

Secretary of State—William H. Seward, New York.*Secretaries of Treasury*—Salmon P. Chase, Ohio; Hugh McCulloch, Indiana.*Secretary of Interior*—James Harlan, Iowa.*Secretaries of War*—Simon Cameron, Pennsylvania; Edwin M. Stanton, Pennsylvania.*Secretary of Navy*—Gideon Welles, Connecticut.*Post-Masters General*—Montgomery Blair, Maryland; William Dennison, Ohio.*Attorneys-General*—Edward Bates, Missouri; James Speed, Kentucky.

Excitement of the War.

1. *Give an outline of Mr. Lincoln's life?*

Abraham Lincoln, the Sixteenth President of the United States, was born in Kentucky, in 1809; in 1816, the family moved to Indiana, where for some years he was employed on his father's farm. At the age of twenty-one he went to Illinois, and then commenced the practice of the law; he rose rapidly in his profession, was elected to Congress in the lower house, and after serving with great distinction in several important offices, was elected President of the United States in 1861.

2. *What condition did Mr. Lincoln find the country in when he assumed the reins of government?*

He found that much of the government property in the

seceded States had been seized by the Confederate government.

3. *What happened in the month of March?*

In the month of March, General, then Colonel Anderson, who was in command at Fort Moultrie, in Charleston harbor, deeming his position insecure, evacuated the fort and retired to Fort Sumter.

4. *What was said of Fort Sumter?*

That it was the strongest fort in the United States, and capable of standing a heavy bombardment.

5. *What order did he receive from the commanding officer of the Confederate States?*

On the 11th of April, General Beauregard ordered him to surrender the fort, this not being complied with, he opened fire on the 12th of April.

6. *What was said of the bombardment?*

A terrific bombardment was kept up for thirty hours from Fort Moultrie, Fort Wagner, on Morris Island, and other small forts and batteries in the harbor.

7. *What was the immediate cause of the fall of Fort Sumter?*

The hot shot fired by the Confederates at the fort set the wood-work on fire, the heat became intense, provisions short, and on the 13th of April the fort was surrendered.

8. *What effect had the fall of Fort Sumter on the people of the North?*

The news of the fall of Fort Sumter created intense excitement throughout the North. Volunteers poured in to preserve the Union. President Lincoln issued a call for seventy-five thousand men, to put down what was called the rebellion.

9. *What was the effect of the commencement of hostilities and the fall of Fort Sumter on the other Southern States?*

The fall of Fort Sumter decided several of the Southern

States to join their fortunes with the Confederacy. Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina, and Tennessee followed the example of the other seceded States, making eleven States, which formed the entire Confederate States.

10. *Give the names of the Southern States which formed the Confederacy?*

South Carolina, Mississippi, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, Texas, Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina, Tennessee.

11. *What was the condition of the Border States at this time?*

Several of the Border States were violently divided in sentiment, many of their citizens being open advocates for secession.

12. *Did the call of Mr. Lincoln for seventy-five thousand men prove sufficient to conquer the seceded States?*

Mr. Lincoln, finding that seventy-five thousand men were not sufficient, made an additional call for eighty-two thousand more on 3d of May.

13. *When did the National forces cross the Potomac river?*

The National forces crossed the Potomac into Virginia on the 24th of May.

14. *Who commanded the Federal forces at the battle of Big Bethel?*

General Butler commanded the forces at Big Bethel, was repulsed, and met with a serious loss.

15. *Where was the main body of the Confederates concentrated?*

The main body of the Confederate forces were concentrated near Manassas Junction, 27 miles from Alexandria.

16. *Under whose orders did the Federal forces move by way of Centreville?*

Under the orders of General Scott, who was in command of the Federal forces at that time.

17. *What success did the Federals meet with at Bull Run?*

At first the Federal forces met with some success, but the arrival of General Johnston with reinforcements turned the tide of battle, and the Federal forces were routed with a large loss of life, ammunition, and camp equipments.

18. *When did the Confederate Congress hold their first meeting in Richmond?*

The Confederate Congress held their first meeting in Richmond on the 20th of July.

19. *What was done by the navy of the United States at this time?*

Several naval expeditions was fitted out by the government. The first under Commodore Stringham and General Butler, the second under Commodore Dupont and General Thomas W. Sherman.

20. *What fort was first taken by the Federal navy?*

That of Hatteras inlet, on the North Carolina coast, with all the munitions of war.

21. *Which fort next surrendered to the Federal navy?*

Port Royal, or more commonly called by the Confederates Fort Walker, situated on Hilton Head island, about six miles from the town of Beaufort.

22. *What time did the Union navy open fire on this fort, and what was the number of vessels engaged in the fight?*

At seven o'clock on the morning of Nov. 7th, some forty sail of vessels, heavily armed with the most approved instruments of war, opened fire on the fort.

23. *How long did the Confederates continue to reply to the fire of the Federal navy?*

The Confederates from the fort kept up the fire until 12 M. All of their guns being dismounted by the Federals, they were compelled to retreat to the mainland.

24. *What was the loss of the Confederates in this battle?*

The loss was comparatively small, three killed and two wounded.

25. *Was there any other fort which was attacked by the Union forces at the battle of Port Royal?*

There was another fort opposite Fort Walker, called Bay Point Fort, which fell at the same time, but with no loss of life.

26. *In the meanwhile, where did the Confederates appear?*

They appeared in Western Virginia, under Generals Wise and Floyd, the latter having been President Buchanan's Secretary of War.

27. *What was apprehended after the disaster that fell to the Union forces after the battle of Bull Run?*

It was much feared that the Confederate forces would make an attack upon Washington, the capital of the United States.

28. *What did General McClellan do to prevent the attack?*

General McClellan at once ordered a large force to Washington, consisting of one hundred and fifty thousand men.

29. *What important event happened on the 8th of November, 1862?*

On the 8th of November, 1862, Messrs. Mason and Slidell, Commissioners from the Confederate States to the Courts of France and England, were arrested on board an English steamer sailing from Havana to Liverpool.

30. *What course did the United States take, when England demanded that they should be immediately surrendered?*

The United States, finding that they had no legal authority to detain the Commissioners, delivered them over, and they sailed for France and England.

31. *Did the English and French nations give any assistance to what was called the rebellion on the part of the Southern States or Southern Confederacy?*

The foreign powers observed strictly the laws of neutrality. Neither England or France furnished any means whereby the war on the part of the Northern or Southern States was maintained.

32. *What number of men had the Federal and Confederate forces in the field at the commencement of the year 1862?*

The Federals had about four hundred and fifty thousand men, and the Confederates about three hundred and twenty-five thousand.

33. *What portion of the Southern States did the Confederate army occupy?*

The Confederate army occupied, at this time (1862), a portion of Kentucky and Missouri, a small part of Western Virginia, and a larger portion of Eastern Virginia and the other Southern States; the main body of the entire army was at Manassas.

34. *Where was General Grant, the Federal commander who had succeeded Lieutenant-general Scott, at this time?*

General Grant, who was placed in command of the United States forces, in connection with the gunboats, effected the important capture of Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland river, in Tennessee.

35. *What important event happened after the fall of Fort Henry?*

An important capture was made by General A. E. Burnside and Commodore Goldsborough. On the 8th of February, captured Roanoke Island; on the 14th of March, took possession of Newbern, North Carolina; and on the 25th of April, captured Beaufort, one of the best harbors in the State, also Fort Macon, which defended its entrance.

36. *What was done by the Confederate Ram Virginia, under Commodore Tatnall?*

After destroying the Federal vessels called the Cumberland and Congress, with a large number of men, she waited until next morning to renew her destruction of the Federal navy near Norfolk.

37. *What floating battery arrived at this time?*

The floating battery Monitor, commanded by Captain Worden, arrived from New York. The next morning, March 9th, an engagement took place, which resulted in the defeat of the

Confederate iron-clad, compelling her to return to Norfolk, after considerable damage.

38. *What was said of the victories gained in Kentucky and Tennessee?*

They were quickly followed up by the Federals, and General Grant, after having been reinforced by Buell, assumed the offensive, drove back the Confederates, and recaptured much that had been lost. The battle of Shiloh was then fought, and after severe loss on both sides, the Confederates fell back to Corinth, which place they evacuated May 30th.

39. *What fort fell into the hands of the Federals on the 11th of April?*

On the 11th of April, Fort Pulaski, situated near Savannah, and commanding the entrance to the same town, was compelled to surrender, after a heavy bombardment of some six or eight hours.

40. *What happened, during the month of April, to the Confederate forces assembled in and near New Orleans?*

After a bombardment of six days, Admiral Farragut, having failed to reduce Forts Jackson and St. Philip, ran past them, and reaching New Orleans on the 28th, that city fell into the hands of the Federals.

41. *Did the Federals succeed in reducing Forts Jackson and St. Philip?*

On the 28th of the month, Commodore Porter, who had been left before them with his mortar boats, after a severe struggle succeeded in compelling the forts to surrender.

42. *What important event happened on the 11th of May?*

On the 11th of May, the Confederates blew up their famous ram Virginia; thus leaving the James river open to the Federal transports.

43. *What was said of "Stonewall" Jackson and General Ewell, whilst in the Shenandoah valley?*

The prompt movement of Jackson and Ewell forced General Banks to make a hasty retreat to the Potomac; they then

threatened Washington, and obliged the President to retain such troops as would have been sent to McClellan, and to call out the militia of the Northern States.

44. *What was said of the seven days' fight, when the Federals fell back to the James river?*

General McClellan, finding that he would require reinforcements, made a hasty retreat, and met with a serious loss of men at the various battles of Oak Grove, Mechanicsville, Gaines' Mill, Savage Station, White Oak Swamp, Charles City Cross-roads, and Malvern Hill. The President, at this time, issued a call for three hundred thousand men.

45. *What was the next advance of the Confederate forces?*

An advance to the Rapidan river a branch of the Rappahannock, under Generals Jackson and Ewell, was met by General Banks at Cedar mountain, on the north side of the Rapidan; the Union forces suffered a terrible loss at the old plains of Manassas and the old battle field of Bull Run, and retreated to Washington in terror and dismay.

46. *What was General Lee's next movement?*

The way was now opened for General Lee to advance his forces into Maryland. His army crossed the Potomac. Frederick and Hagerstown were occupied. He gave battle to the Federal forces, and after no particular advantage to either side, he fell back to a position on Antietam creek.

47. *Did the Confederate forces gain any thing by the falling back of General Lee on Antietam creek?*

"Stonewall" Jackson then joined General Lee. Harper's Ferry, with a large number (twelve thousand men), was taken by the Confederates. The next day was fought the great battle of Antietam, in which neither side derived any particular advantage. General Lee withdrew his forces, and retired toward Winchester.

48. *What was the condition of the Union army at this time?*

The Union army remained in Maryland several weeks.

The Confederate General Stuart made a successful raid into Pennsylvania. A forward movement was made by General McClellan, on the 26th of October, but on the 7th of November, McClellan was superseded by General Burnside, who led the Union army toward Fredericksburg, on the Rappahannock. Lee met Burnside, and compelled him to recross the river with a loss of fifteen thousand men.

49. *In the meanwhile, what was done in Kentucky?*

General E. Kirby Smith advanced from Knoxville, defeated a Federal force near Richmond, Kentucky, and occupied Lexington and Frankford.

50. *When did the Confederates resume operations in Mississippi?*

Early in the fall they resumed operations in and about Corinth. General Rosecrans defeated the Confederate force under General Price, at Iuka.

51. *Who did General Grant join?*

General Grant joined General W. T. Sherman in an attack on the city of Vicksburg. Grant was compelled to fall back, and Sherman was repulsed.

52. *What happened at the close of the year 1862?*

At the close of the year, the hotly contested battle of Murfreesboro' which lasted for several days, was ended partially in favor of the Federal arms, but with a heavy loss of killed, wounded, and missing on the part of the Federals.

53. *What advantage was gained in Florida?*

The Federals succeeded in occupying Pensacola and other places in Florida, and that of a small district in Louisiana, called Lafourche.

54. *What was the condition of the financial state of the country at this time?*

There was a general derangement of finances; the New York banks suspended specie payment; taxes were imposed on incomes and manufactories; revenue stamps were required to be placed on bonds, mortgages, etc.; the Secretary of the

Treasury issued United States notes, called "Greenbacks," and gold rapidly advanced.

55. *When did President Lincoln issue his Emancipation Proclamation?*

On the 1st of January, 1863, the President issued his Emancipation Proclamation, declaring slavery abolished, except in such portions of States as were held by the Federal government,

56. *Who succeeded General Burnside in the command of the Army of the Potomac?*

General Joseph Hooker was appointed in his place. Three months later, Hooker crossed the Rappahannock and Rapidan, and advanced to Chancellorsville, where, after a desperate conflict, he was obliged to recross the Rappahannock, with a loss of twelve thousand men killed and wounded.

57. *What serious loss did the Confederates meet with at this time?*

General "Stonewall" Jackson, one of the ablest Confederate generals, was accidentally shot, and died in about a week after the battle.

58. *When did General Lee determine, for a second time, to carry the war into Maryland and Pennsylvania?*

He began to move early in June, and took Winchester and Martinsburg. He was soon in southern Pennsylvania. Chambersburg and York fell into his hands, and one of his divisions advanced within a few miles of Harrisburg.

59. *What was said of the battle of Gettysburg, Pennsylvania?*

The struggle commenced July 1st, and was continued two days, terminating in the defeat of General Lee, who, on the 4th of July, crossed the Potomac.

60. *What was the condition of General Banks' army at Port Hudson?*

It consisted mostly of negro troops. Some fifty thousand negroes joined the army, part of whom were from the Northern States, and those who had been freed by Mr. Lincoln's proclamation.

61. *What was the condition of the Federal navy at this time?*

Two of their achievements require some notice. They destroyed the privateer Nashville, lying near Fort McAllister, on the Great Ogeechee river, Georgia, on the 17th of June, and the Confederate iron-clad Atlanta hauled down her colors after an action with the Weehawken in Warsaw sound, Georgia.

62. *When did Mr. Lincoln make his draft for three hundred thousand men?*

On the 3d of March, Congress passed a conscription act, authorizing the President to recruit the army, if necessary. Two months afterward, the President made a call for three hundred thousand men. The measure was unpopular. Riots occurred in New York. About fifty thousand men were obtained by this draft, and in October another call was made for three hundred thousand volunteers.

63. *What raid was made by a Confederate general in June?*

General John Morgan, a distinguished cavalry officer, rapidly traversing Kentucky, defeated two detachments of Federal forces, reached the Ohio river, seized a couple of steamboats, and crossed into Indiana. After traversing southern Ohio, destroying and capturing a large quantity of horses and provisions, he attempted to recross into northern Virginia to join General Lee, but was met by General Hobson. He was defeated and taken prisoner on the 26th of July.

64. *In the meantime, what was done in Charleston harbor, South Carolina?*

A naval attack was made on the fortifications, April 7th, by a strong force of iron-clads, and a land force co-operating, under General Q. A. Gilmore. He began operations on Folly island, took the batteries on the south end of Morris island, and opened a furious bombardment on batteries Wagner and Gregg.

65. *Was General Gilmore successful in his attempts to carry Forts Wagner and Gregg?*

General Gilmore made two attempts to carry the forts by

storm, but was repulsed with heavy loss. In the meantime the siege works were pushed forward with great vigor. On the 17th of August, the Confederates were forced to evacuate Forts Wagner and Gregg. General Gilmore occupied the works on the 7th of September.

66. *What were the movements of General Rosecrans after his capture of Murfreesboro?*

He sent out various expeditions, some of which were successful. Colonel Streight, however, with eighteen hundred men, was captured by General Forrest in Georgia.

67. *What was the condition of General Bragg at this time?*

General Bragg was largely reinforced by Longstreet's army, a greater part of Johnston's force from Mississippi, and some of the prisoners paroled at Vicksburg and Port Hudson.

68. *What battle occurred on the 19th of September, near Chickamauga creek, Georgia?*

The battle of Chickamauga; in which the Federal forces were repulsed, with a terrible loss of seventeen thousand men, besides small arms, artillery, and colors.

69. *What was the condition of General Rosecrans' army after the battle of Chickamauga, and how was he released?*

His army was in serious danger. The Confederates having severed his lines, and threatened Chattanooga from the neighboring heights, and also from Lookout mountain and Missionary Ridge, he was relieved by the fortunate arrival of General Hooker, who succeeded in opening the Tennessee river, so that supplies could be brought in.

70. *Who superseded General Rosecrans at Chattanooga?*

General Grant, who had been ordered from Vicksburg, superseded General Rosecrans, and was not long in assuming the offensive. Lookout mountain was carried on the 24th of November, Missionary Ridge on the 25th, and Bragg was compelled to retreat toward Ringgold, Georgia.

71. *What was the first important movement made in 1864 by General Sherman?*

The first important movement was made from Vicksburg through the State of Mississippi as far as Meridian. Here he expected a large cavalry force from Memphis, Tennessee, but, after waiting some days, they not having arrived, he was compelled to retrace his steps to Vicksburg, accompanied by six thousand negroes, who had left their masters to join the Federal army.

72. In the meanwhile, what disaster befell the Federal arms in Florida?

The Federal General Seymour disembarked his troops at Jacksonville, Florida, advanced some thirty-five miles on the railroad. He was met at Olustee, or Ocean Pond, by the Confederate Generals Finagan, Walker, and Anderson, and, after a stubborn fight for three or four hours, General Seymour was compelled to fall back on Baldwin, with the loss of three thousand men, including arms and ammunition.

73. What change was made in the Federal army on March 3d, 1864?

The grade of Lieutenant-general having become extinct upon the retirement of General Scott, was revived by an Act of Congress, and General Grant was made Lieutenant-general of the forces of the United States.

74. What did he do after his appointment as Lieutenant-general?

He turned the command of his army over to General W. T. Sherman, and made his headquarters with the Army of the Potomac.

75. What important order did he give in the month of May?

He ordered a simultaneous advance to be made by both bodies of the army—General Sherman to move upon Atlanta, Georgia, and the Army of the Potomac upon the Confederate capital.

76. What time did General Sherman get his army into motion?

On the 7th of May he flanked the Confederates at Dalton, Georgia, obliged them to fall back on Resaca, and, after a desperate action on the 13th and 14th of May, they continued to retreat, giving battle at Dallas, May 28th, Lost mountain, June 15th, 16th, and 17th, and finally, on the 10th of July, they were driven into their fortifications before Atlanta.

77. *What was the impression of the Confederates concerning the many retreats made by General Johnston?*

The retreats were loudly condemned by the Confederates, and he was eventually superseded by General Hood.

78. *What was the condition of Atlanta, Georgia, at this time?*

The city was now vigorously besieged.

79. *What movements did General Sherman make while in front of Atlanta?*

He sent out raiding parties in various directions to destroy the railroads, whereby the Confederates received their supplies; he also interposed a strong force between Atlanta and Jonesboro, whereby Hood's army was divided, and he was compelled to evacuate the city.

80. *What other movements did General Grant put in motion at this time?*

General Grant ordered an attack on Lynchburg, by cutting the Virginia and Tennessee railroad, which was done by General Crook, who was to join a cavalry force under Averill and Sigel; but Averill was turned back, and Sigel was defeated near New Market. The attack on Lynchburg had to be given up.

81. *What important movement was made on the 5th of May?*

General Butler landed a strong force on the south side of James river, threatening at once Petersburg and Richmond. He was defeated by a force under Beauregard, on his way from Carolina to join General Lee.

82. *What attack was again undertaken on Lynchburg?*

General Hunter, who superseded Sigel in Western Virginia, after defeating several detachments of the Confederates, reached

a point within a few miles of Lynchburg, but there finding that reinforcements had arrived from Richmond, he retreated into Western Virginia, hotly pursued by General Early.

83. *What was General Grant doing at this time?*

He was vigorously pushing the siege of Petersburg. Expeditions were sent out to cut the railroads, and assaults were made on the Confederate lines on both sides of the James river. On the 30th of July, a mine was exploded under one of the Confederate forts in the defence of Petersburg. An assault was then made, but repulsed, with a loss of five thousand men of the Federal army.

84. *Who was elected at the Presidential election of 1864?*

Two candidates were presented—President Lincoln, for the second term, and General McClellan. The former was elected by a large majority; Andrew Johnson was elected as Vice-President.

85. *What was the condition of the Confederate and Federal armies after the capture of Atlanta by Sherman?*

Hood tried to break the Federal communications, and withdrew into northern Alabama. General Sherman sent two corps to General Thomas. On the 15th of November, he applied the torch indiscriminately to the private and public buildings of Atlanta, and abandoned his base in the interior, with the resolution to find a new one on the coast.

86. *What success did General Sherman meet with?*

The movement was a perfect success. The Confederates were able to offer but slight resistance, and, on the 10th of December, the Federal army arrived within a few miles of Savannah.

87. *What was Hood doing in the meanwhile?*

He was invading Tennessee, driving back the Federal forces from point to point, defeating them at Franklin, and, on November 30th, he found Thomas's army drawn up in its intrenchments, three miles south of Nashville. While Hood was preparing to blockade the river and cut the railroads, Thomas, on

the 15th of December, attacked the Confederates, and drove them from their position with a loss of thirteen thousand prisoners. Hood again withdrew with his army into northern Alabama.

88. *What delay did Sherman allow his army at Savannah?*

He allowed his army but a short rest at Savannah. He immediately crossed the Savannah river into South Carolina, destroying railroads, public buildings, towns, and villages, until he reached Columbia, the capital of the State.

89. *What action was taken by the mayor of Columbia on the approach of Sherman's army to that city?*

The mayor immediately went out to meet General Sherman, and officially informed him that the city was at their disposal, all of the Confederate troops having been withdrawn.

90. *What was the fate of Columbia?*

Nearly all the public buildings, with a large portion of the private residences and places of business, were laid in ashes.

91. *What course did Sherman pursue after leaving Columbia?*

He directed his course to North Carolina, entering Fayetteville on the 11th of March. On the 21st, he entered Goldsboro, where he effected a junction with Generals Schofield and Terry.

92. *What course did General Hardee pursue after abandoning Savannah?*

General Hardee, after abandoning Savannah, assumed command of the forces in and around Charleston, but was forced to evacuate the city, owing to Sherman's movements in his rear and Gilmore's batteries in his front.

93. *When did Charleston surrender?*

Charleston surrendered to the Federal forces on the 18th of February, 1865, the city having been under bombardment for five hundred and forty-two days.

94. *What was the effect of Grant's combinations on the Confederate cause?*

Grant's combinations were now so perfect, and his forces so overwhelming, that the Confederate leaders could no longer close their eyes to their unfortunate condition. General Lee now felt the necessity of surrendering the Confederate forces under his command, which he performed on the 9th of April, 1865, his army being reduced to twenty-five thousand men.

95. *What sad event happened on the evening of the 14th of April, 1865?*

Abraham Lincoln, while seated in a private box in a theatre at Washington, was assassinated by John W. Booth, and died twenty-two minutes past seven o'clock the following morning.

CHAPTER XXIX.

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Officers of Government.

ANDREW JOHNSON, TENNESSEE, SEVENTEENTH PRESIDENT.

Born, Raleigh, North Carolina, 1808.

Inaugurated April 15th, 1865.

SENATOR LAFAYETTE C. FOSTER, CONNECTICUT, ACTING VICE-PRESIDENT.

Secretary of State—William H. Seward, New York.

Secretary of Treasury—Hugh McCulloch, Indiana.

Secretary of War—Edwin M. Stanton, Pennsylvania.

Secretary of Interior—James Harlan, Indiana.

Attorney-General—James Speed, Kentucky.

Post-Master General—William Dennison, Ohio.

Secretary of Navy—Gideon Welles, Connecticut.

1. *Who was made President by the assassination of President Lincoln?*

Andrew Johnson, Vice-President, became President of the United States, and took the oath of office on the 15th day of April, 1865.

2. *What effect had the surrender of General Lee on the Confederate cause?*

The surrender of General Lee deprived the Confederates of all hope, and was speedily followed by the surrender of all other generals in the field.

CHAPTER XXX.

PHYSICAL FEATURES—POPULATION—EMPLOYMENTS—AGRICULTURE—GENERAL INDUSTRY—COMMERCE—GOVERNMENT—RELIGION AND EDUCATION.

Physical Features.

GEOGRAPHICAL POSITION.—The United States occupy the central or middle part of North America, extending from British America and the great lakes on the North, to the Gulf of Mexico and the Mexican Republic on the South, and from the Atlantic on the East, to the Pacific on the West.

Area in square miles, 3,385,000.

Length from East to West, about 3,000 miles.

Breadth from North to South, about 1,700 miles.

Number of Territories, 6.

Population, 23,663,079.

Number of States, 33.

Number of inhabitants to square mile, 7.

EXTENT OF COAST.—The main shore on the Atlantic, including indentations of the coast, such as bays, sounds, &c., measures over 6,000 miles; on the Gulf of Mexico, about 3,500 miles; on the Pacific, about 2,300 miles; and on the shores of the Northern Lakes, nearly 4,000 miles. The frontier on British America is about 3,300 miles in length, and the frontier on the Mexican Republic, about 1,500 miles.

COMPARATIVE SIZE.—The Territorial extent of the Republic of the United States is nearly TEN times as large as that of Great Britain and France combined; three times as large as the whole of France, Britain, Austria, Prussia, Spain, Portugal, Belgium, Holland, and Denmark, together; one and a half times as large as the empire of Russia in Europe; and about one-tenth less than the area of all Europe.

SURFACE.—The United States may be divided into three great physical regions, viz.: The Atlantic Slope, the Great Valley of the Mississippi River, and the Pacific Slope.

THE ATLANTIC SLOPE extends from the ocean 50 to 100 miles inland, gradually increasing in elevation, until it terminates in the Alleghanies. From these mountains, the rivers flow westwardly to the Mississippi, and eastwardly to the Atlantic.

THE GREAT VALLEY OF THE MISSISSIPPI comprises that portion of the United States lying between the Alleghany ridge and the Rocky Mountains. The central part of this Valley is intersected by the Mississippi River, which flows through it in a southerly direction, and finds its outlet in the Gulf of Mexico.

THE PACIFIC SLOPE extends westward from the Rocky Mountain range to the Pacific Ocean. This slope is considerably diversified by many minor mountain ranges, and numerous hills.

THE ALLEGHANIES are less a chain of mountains than a long plateau, crested with several chains, separated from each other

by wide and elevated valleys. East of the Hudson, the mountains are chiefly granite, with rounded summits, often covered at their tops with bogs and turf, and distributed in irregular groups. The Green Mountains, in Vermont, and the White Mountains, in New Hampshire, rise to the height of 5,000 to 6,226 feet above the sea level. In Pennsylvania and Virginia, they assume the form of long, parallel ridges, occupying a breadth of 100 miles base; and varying in height from 2,000 to 4,500 feet. In North Carolina, the highest culmination, *Clingman's Peak*, is 6,941 feet. In Georgia and the Northern part of Alabama, they again break into isolated groups, and attain considerable elevations.

THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS are on a much grander scale than the Alleghanies. Their base is 300 miles in extent; their loftiest summits, covered with eternal snow, rise to the height of 10,000 to 14,000 feet, forming a portion of the Cordilleras. They traverse Western America from Cape Horn to the Polar Sea. They are distant from the Pacific from 500 to 600 miles; but between them and the coast, several minor ranges intersect the country.

THE MARITIME OR COAST RANGE runs almost parallel to, and but a short distance from the shores of the Pacific. It is seldom broken through in any part of its whole length.

THE REMARKABLE FEATURE of the United States, is the low plain which extends from 50 to 100 miles wide along the Atlantic coast. Beyond this plain, the land rises toward the interior, until it terminates in the Alleghanies. The rest of the country east of the Mississippi is agreeably diversified. The Pacific section is a highly raised country, abounding in wild and majestic scenery, and traversed by large and magnificent rivers. Much of the interior is desert. The Great California Desert is one of the dreariest regions in the world—the solitude being relieved only by a few oases in the neighborhood of great streams, or by the borders of numerous lakes.

Population.

THE INHABITANTS consist of Whites, Negroes, and Indians. The Whites are nearly all of European descent, and form the greater part of the population. The Negroes are of African descent; and the Indians are aborigines. The following table indicates the NATIVITY of the population :

						per cent.
Natives of Ireland in the United States in 1850,						961,719 43.04
"	"	Germany	"	"	"	573,225 25.09
"	"	England	"	"	"	278,675 12.06
"	"	British America	"	"	"	147,700 6.68
"	"	Scotland	"	"	"	70,550 3.17
"	"	France	"	"	"	54,069 2.44
"	"	Wales	"	"	"	29,868 1.34
"	"	Other countries	"	"	"	95,022 4.47
Total foreign population, - -						2,211,828
Number of slaves, - - - -						3,204,089
Number of free-colored, - - - -						428,661
Total colored population, - -						3,632,750
Native population, - - - -						17,818,501
Total population, - - - -						23,663,079

Employments.

The numbers employed in the United States are as follows :

IN AGRICULTURE, 2,400,583; in trade, commerce, manufactures, mechanics, and mining, 1,596,265; in labor not agricultural, 993,620; in sea and river navigation, 116,341; in law, 23,939; in medicine, 40,564; in divinity, 26,842; in the army, 5,370; in other pursuits requiring education, 95,814; in governmental civil service, 24,966; domestic servants, not including slaves, 22,243; other occupations, 22,159. Total, 5,371,876.

AGRICULTURE.—The number of acres of land in the States and Territories, occupied for agricultural purposes, is 293,560,614. Of these 7.71 per cent. are improved, and 12.31 per cent. unimproved. The cash value of farms and improvements is estimated at \$3,271,575,426. The horses, asses, and mules amount to 4,896,050; neat cattle, 18,378,907; sheep, 21,723,220; swine, 30,354,213.

THE FOOD CROPS are wheat, 100,485,914 bushels; rye, 14,188,813; oats, 146,584,179; barley, 5,167,015; buckwheat, 8,956,912; indian corn, 592,071,104; Irish potatoes, 65,795,896; sweet potatoes, 38,268,148; peas and beans, 9,219,901.

THE SPECIAL OR EXPORTING CROPS.—Cotton, 2,445,793 bales;

sugar cane, 273,113,000 pounds; maple sugar, 34,253,436 pounds; rice, 215,313,497; tobacco, 199,752,665; hemp and flax, 38,726 tons.

General Industry.

GENERAL INDUSTRY.—The total number of establishments, including mines, manufactories, mechanic shops, fisheries, &c., amount to 121,855; capital invested in them, \$527,209,113; value of raw material, fuel, &c., consumed, \$554,665,038; number of hands employed, 944,991, viz.: males, 719,479; females, 225,512; wages paid during the year, \$229,736,577. Total value of yearly products, \$1,013,336,463.

COAL MINES.—Production of anthracite coal, 3,796,808 tons; bituminous coal, 1,253,146 tons; together valued at \$7,239,110.

IRON WORKS.—The capital employed in iron factories was \$51,796,065; the value of products, \$60,486,153.

SALT WORKS.—Establishments, 340; capital, \$2,640,885; annual produce, 9,763,840 bushels; valued at \$2,222,745.

COTTON FACTORIES.—The capital invested, \$74,500,931; number of bales annually consumed, 641,240; value of productions, \$61,869,134.

WOOL FACTORIES.—Capital invested, \$28,118,650; annual amount consumed, 70,862,829 pounds; value of products, \$43,207,545.

TANNERIES.—Capital invested, \$18,900,557; value of raw material annually used, \$19,613,237; value of products; \$32,816,975.

DISTILLERIES.—Capital invested, \$8,507,576; materials used—barley, 3,787,193 bushels; corn, 11,067,761 bushels; rye, 2,143,927 bushels; oats, 56,607 bushels; apples, 526,840 bushels; hops, 1,294 tons; molasses, 61,675 hogsheads. Porter, ale, &c., 1,179,495 barrels; whisky and high wines, 41,364,224 gallons, and rum, 6,500 gallons.

FISHERIES.—Capital employed, \$8,969,044; product of the year, \$1,000,182.

COMMERCE.—Value of foreign commerce, \$333,037,038; of which sum \$151,898,720 represented exports; and \$178,138,318 imports. This commerce is carried on with eighty-one foreign States and countries. These rank in importance as follows:

1. Great Britain and Ireland; 2. France; 3. British Colonies; 4. Spanish Colonies; 5. Hanse Towns; 6. China; 7. Holland; 8. Belgium; 9. Italian States, &c.

SHIPPING.—The entered shipping of the United States is 2,573,000 tons, American; and 1,775,623 tons, foreign. The total tonnage belonging to the United States, is 3,535,454. Total number of vessels built in 1850, was 3,160, viz.: 246 ships; 117 brigs; 547 schooners; 290 sloops, and 159 steamers.

INTERNAL COMMERCE—Estimated at about 200,000,000 annually.

MEANS OF INTERCOURSE.—Coast navigation, including bays, &c., 12,609 miles; including the shores of islands, 21,856 miles. River navigation to the head of tide, 11,300 miles. Lake shores, 4,000 miles. Canal navigation, including those of California, about 6,000 miles. Rail-roads in 1855, over 25,000 miles. Cost of rail-roads in the United States, about \$40,000 per mile. In France, about \$100,000 per mile; and in Great Britain, about \$167,000 per mile.

ELECTRIC TELEGRAPH.—The length of the telegraph completed, is about 41,500 miles, at a cost of nearly \$7,000,000.

THE ATLANTIC TELEGRAPH.—While we write, August, 1858, bonfires and illuminations are lighting up every city and town throughout the old and new world, at the completion of the submarine telegraph, which brings the Eastern and Western Hemispheres in communication with each other.

THE MINT.—Value of gold deposited in the United States Mint and its branches, during the year 1856, \$59,345,365; silver, \$5,196,067; copper, \$27,106. Total, \$64,567,143. The total deposit of gold at the Mint and its branches to the close of 1856, was \$378,888,713, of which \$360,744,913 were from California.

THE ARMY of the United States, in 1850, consisted of 10,334 men, of which 889 were commissioned officers. The militia at the same date numbered 2,006,456 men of all arms, of which 72,938 were commissioned officers. Connected with the army are two national armories; one at Springfield, Massachusetts, the other at Harper's Ferry, Virginia. Besides these, there are 25 arsenals, 102 military forts, posts, &c. At West Point, on the Hudson River, there is a military academy for the education of cadets.

THE NAVY consisted, in 1857, of 80 vessels of war, viz.: 10

ships of the line, carrying from 120 to 84 guns; 13 frigates, carrying from 56 to 50 guns; 19 sloops-of-war, carrying from 22 to 16 guns; 4 brigs, carrying from 6 to 3 guns; 7 steamers, carrying from 50 to 40 guns; and 22 steamers, carrying from 13 to 2 guns, and 5 store ships. The fleet is divided into six squadrons, viz.: The Home, Brazil, Pacific, Mediterranean, African, and East India. There are Navy Yards at Portsmouth, Virginia; Boston, Massachusetts; New York; Philadelphia, Pennsylvania; Washington, District of Columbia; Norfolk, Virginia; Pensacola, Florida; and Memphis, Tennessee. A Naval Asylum at Philadelphia, and a Naval Academy at Annapolis, Maryland. The marine corps is organized as a brigade, consisting of 1,100 men, of which 60 are commissioned officers

Government.

GOVERNMENT.—The Government of the United States is based on the Constitution of 1787.

THE LEGISLATIVE POWER is vested in a Congress, which consists of a Senate and House of Representatives.

THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES is composed of members, chosen every two years by the people, and in number according to population. Two-thirds of the slaves, and all Indians not taxed, are excluded from the Representative population. Each State, however small its population, is entitled to one Representative; and each organized Territory is entitled to one Delegate, who can debate on subjects on which his constituents are interested, but cannot vote. A Representative must be twenty-five years of age, must have been seven years a citizen, and a resident of the State from which elected.

RATIO OF REPRESENTATION.—From 1790 to 1800, each State was entitled to one Representative to every 33,000 inhabitants. In 1810, one for every 35,000; in 1820, one for every 40,000; in 1830, one for every 47,000; in 1840, one for every 70,680; in 1850, one for every 93,420. Future ratio of apportionment is to be determined by the Secretary of the Interior, who is required to divide 233 into the whole representative population, giving States with the largest fractions, members to make up the total. The whole number of Representatives is fixed at 233, but each State shall be entitled to members in proportion to its representative population, until the next census.

THE SENATE.—Each State is entitled to two Senators, elected

by the Legislatures thereof, for six years. One-third of the Senate is renewed biennially. Senators must be at least thirty years of age, must have been citizens for nine years, and be resident in the State from which elected.

THE EXECUTIVE POWER is vested in a President, or in case of his death or removal from office, in a Vice-President. These are elected for four years, by the electoral college chosen by popular vote, or by the Legislatures of the States severally. The number of electors is equal to that of the whole number of Senators and Representatives in Congress. A majority of the aggregate electoral votes is necessary to elect.

THE PRESIDENT AND VICE-PRESIDENT must be native born citizens, at least thirty-five years of age, and have been resident for fourteen years. The President is commander-in-chief of the army and navy, and of the militia when in the service of the Union. With the concurrence of two-thirds of the Senate, he has the power to ratify treaties, appoint civil and military officers, levy war, conclude peace, &c. He has a veto upon the action of Congress, provided that body does not reaffirm its action by a vote of two-thirds. In case of the death, resignation, or disability of the President, the Vice-President acts in his stead.

THE CABINET is composed of administrative officers, appointed by the President. They are the Secretaries of State, War, Navy, Treasury, and Interior; the Post-Master General and the Attorney-General each presides over a separate department.

THE JUDICIAL POWER consists, at present, of a Supreme Court, Circuit Court, and District Court, established by Congress. The Supreme Court is composed of a Chief Justice and eight Associate Justices, the Attorney-General, a reporter, and chief clerk. This court is held at Washington, and has one session annually. Circuit Courts are held by a Justice of the Supreme Court, conjointly with the Judge of the district in which the court sits. District Courts are held by District Judges alone. In each State there are one or more districts for the purpose of holding these courts. There are also Territorial Courts, which cease whenever a Territory becomes a State. Each district has a clerk, public attorney, and a marshal. The clerks are appointed by the court. The judges and other officers are appointed by the President, with the consent of the Senate.

THE POWERS OF CONGRESS are particularly specified in the Constitution. They can only be ascertained by a careful study of that instrument. All powers not granted to Congress are reserved to the States.

Religion.

RELIGION.—In the United States there is no church establishment. Every one may worship God according to the dictates of his conscience. In 1850, there were 38,183 buildings, used as places of worship, capable of seating 14,270,130 persons. Value of church lands and possessions, \$87,445,371. Number of regular and occasional clergymen, 30,000. Of the different sects, the chief were, 4,209,333 Methodists; 3,130,788 Baptists; 2,040,316 Presbyterians; 795,177 Congregationalists; 615,213 Episcopalians; 620,950 Catholics; and 137,367 Unitarians; besides other sects making up the aggregate.

Literature and Education.

NEWSPAPERS AND PERIODICALS.—The number, in 1850, was 2,526, with an annual circulation of 426,409,978 copies; of these, 254 were daily, 115 tri-weekly, 31 semi-weekly, and 1,902 weekly, 97 monthly, 100 semi-monthly, and 19 quarterly.

As regards the character of these issues, 568 were literary and miscellaneous; 83 neutral and independent; 1,630 political and partisan; 191 religious, and 93 scientific.

LIBRARIES.—As yet, there are no libraries, either public or private, in the United States, that can compare with those of Europe. The library of Harvard University, of 84,200 volumes; the Philadelphia Library, of 60,000; the library of Yale College, of 50,500; the library of the United States Congress, of 50,000, and that of the Boston Athenæum, of 50,000, are the largest in the Union. These, together with other public and private libraries, contain an aggregate of over 5,000,000 of volumes.

EDUCATION.—At present there are over 90,000 educational institutions in the United States; 239 of them are colleges; 6,000 private schools, and over 80,000 public. The total number of teachers is 106,000, and of scholars nearly 4,000,000. Of the free population over 20 years of age, about 1,060,000 were unable to read or write; and of this number, 858,306 were native born, and 195,114 foreigners.

PAUPERISM.—The total number of paupers, for the year 1850, was 50,355, of whom 36,916 were natives, and 13,439, foreigners.

Conclusion.

IN CONCLUSION, a few remarks may not be inappropriate. There is blended up in our history, an originality of feature, a national importance, which should make an American blush not to know it. Nowhere, in ancient or in modern times, is there any thing to compare with the rapidity of our nation's progress.

A little less than four centuries ago, navigation knew not her shores; and the very idea of her existence scarce had a believer. In a few years, a handful of adventurers, and some pilgrims, touched her soil, and a mighty Republic has sprung up. To imagination, it appears but as a day, when we beheld the fearful waves dashing the first skiff, which first landed our fathers on the capes of Virginia and on the rocks of Plymouth. And even now, we seem to hear the savage yell, breaking in upon their guardless rest with the tomahawk and scalping knife. Scarce does the cry sink down from the ear, when the cannon of England's soldiery is seen cutting down their small ranks on the battle plain. But, amidst all these troubles; amidst the inclemency of seasons; the wildness of forests; the horrors of famine, and the brutality of savage warfare; under British taxation and British invasion, we have seen them rise up, a free, sovereign, and independent nation. Scarce have the remains of the first settlers' cabins mouldered, when splendid cities have sprung up from their foundations. The first vessels which navigated her waters have not yet decayed, when they return, and pass by her coasts studded with a hundred towns. Her name just established among nations, and we see her commerce running into every corner of the globe, and her flag waving in honor over every sea.

Seventy years ago, with a population not exceeding three millions, she now contains ten times that number, spread over a territory equally augmented. Her people, too, not in the ignorant degradation of their fellow men in other parts of the world, but living in enlightened life—most of them educated, and all of them having it in their power to become so; with religious immunities, which no human power dare control, free and as pure as the very air which they breathe. In the contemplation of such a country, there is much that is gratulating to an American's breast. And if we would maintain its pride,

its glory, and its liberty, we should not forget this rich legacy of our fathers. It was a virtuous, but an arduous task, by which they transmitted it to us. It was to them the destitution of many enjoyments and comforts. It was to them the loss of treasure, and, in many cases, the loss of life. They built it up with their bones, and cemented it with their blood. As a sacred monument to their memories, we should pledge ourselves to protect it. It was not every-day men that made this government what it is ; but such as, feeling the hard necessity of the task, brought to their aid minds which felt no interest but that of the Republic. A few such spirits are met with in an age. Like stars scattered over the darkness of Heaven, they diffuse their cheering light. Let us ever watch them in their elevation, and gather from their course their brighter virtues. And if to their immortal spirits it be permitted to look down from that Heaven, of which they dreamed, may it be to shed upon our path the same light of purity and of peace which they enjoy.

APPENDIX I.

DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.

THE UNANIMOUS DECLARATION OF THE THIRTEEN UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident:—That all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate, that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all

experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these Colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them. He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the repository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large, for their exercise, the state remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these states; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners, refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers, to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation—

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us :

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these states :

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world :

For imposing taxes on us without our consent :

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury :

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offenses :

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies :

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the forms of our governments :

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries, to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyr-

anny, already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attentions to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity; and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war—in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the Representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent states may of right do. And, for the support of this declara-

tion, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

JOHN HANCOCK.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

Josiah Bartlett,
William Whipple,
Matthew Thornton.

MASSACHUSETTS BAY.

John Hancock,
Samuel Adams,
John Adams,
Robert Treat Paine,
Elbridge Gerry.

RHODE ISLAND, ETC.

Stephen Hopkins,
William Ellery.

CONNECTICUT.

Roger Sherman,
Samuel Huntington,
William Williams,
Oliver Wolcott.

NEW YORK.

William Floyd,
Philip Livingston,
Francis Lewis,
Lewis Morris.

NEW JERSEY.

Richard Stockton,
John Witherspoon,
Francis Hopkinson,
John Hart,
Abraham Clark.

PENNSYLVANIA.

Robert Morris,
Benjamin Rush,
Benjamin Franklin,
John Morton,
George Clymer,
James Smith,
George Taylor,
James Wilson,
George Ross.

DELAWARE.

Cæsar Rodney,
George Read,
Thomas M'Kean.

MARYLAND.

Samuel Chase,
William Paca,

Thomas Stone,
C. Carroll, of Carrollton.

VIRGINIA.

George Wythe,
Richard Henry Lee
Thomas Jefferson,
Benjamin Harrison,
Thomas Nelson, Jr.,
Francis Lightfoot Lee,
Carter Braxton.

NORTH CAROLINA.

William Hooper,
Joseph Hewes,
John Penn.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

Edward Rutledge,
Thomas Heyward, Jr.
Thomas Lynch, Jr.,
Arthur Middleton.

GEORGIA.

Burton Gwinnett,
Lyman Hall,
George Walton.

APPENDIX II.

THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA:

FRAMED by a Convention of Delegates, of which WASHINGTON was the President, which met at Philadelphia, from the States of New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia; and adopted 17th September, 1787.

PREAMBLE.

We, the people of the United States, in order to form ^{Objects.} a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

SECTION I.

1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be ^{Legislative} vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall ^{powers.} consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

QUESTIONS ON THE CONSTITUTION.

PREAMBLE.—For what objects did the people of the United States adopt a constitution?

ARTICLE I.—*Section I.* In whom does the constitution vest all legislative powers? Of whom does this Congress consist?

SECTION II.

House of
Rep.

1. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year, by the people of the several States; and the electors in each State shall have the qualification requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

Qualifica-
tions of rep.

2. No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Apportion-
ment of
rep.

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of *New Hampshire* shall be entitled to choose three; *Massachusetts*, eight; *Rhode Island and Providence Plantations*, one; *Connecticut*, five; *New York*, six; *New Jersey*, four; *Pennsylvania*, eight; *Delaware*, one; *Maryland*, six; *Virginia*, ten; *North Carolina*, five; *South Carolina*, five; and *Georgia*, three.

Section II. 1. Who chooses representatives? How often? Qualification of electors of representatives?

2. Age of a representative? How long must he have been a citizen of the United States? Of what State an inhabitant?

3. How are representatives and direct taxes to be apportioned among the several states? How are their respective numbers to be determined? When was the first census or enumeration to be made? How often afterward? How many inhabitants could send one representative? Suppose a state had less than thirty thousand? Which state at first sent the greatest number of representatives? How many? Which state sent eight? Which six? Which five? Which four? Which three? Which two? Which one?

4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the Executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill up such vacancies. Vacancies, how filled.

5. The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment. Speaker, how appointed.

SECTION III.

1. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote. No. of sen. from each state.

2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided, as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the Senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies. Classification of senators.

3. No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States; and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen. Qualification of sen.

4. How are vacancies filled?

5. Speaker and other officers of the house, by whom chosen? Who has the sole power of impeachment?

Section III. 1. Of whom is the Senate composed? How chosen? For what time? How many votes has each senator? Have not the large states more senators than the small states? Have the small states, then, the same power in passing or rejecting a bill, as the large states?

2. Into how many classes are the senators divided? When are the seats of the first class vacated? When those of the second? When those of the third? How often, then, is one-third chosen? What advantage is there in this arrangement? How are vacancies which occur during the recess of a legislature filled? How long does such senator hold his office?

3. Age of a senator? How long a citizen of the United States? How long an inhabitant of the state?

Presiding
officer of
Senate.

4. The Vice-President of the United States shall be President of the Senate; but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a President *pro tempore* in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

Senate a
court for
trial of im-
peachments,

6. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

Judgment in
case of con-
viction.

7. Judgment, in case of impeachment, shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit, under the United States; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION IV.

Election of
sen. and of
rep.

1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each state by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the place of choosing senators.

Meeting of
Congress.

2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year; and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

4. Who presides in the Senate? What vote has he?

5. Other officers of the Senate, by whom chosen? What is a president *pro tempore*? What duties may devolve upon him?

6. Who tries impeachments? Who would preside, were the President of the United States to be impeached? Majority necessary to a conviction?

7. Suppose a person convicted, to what might the penalty extend? To what would the convicted party be further liable?

Section IV. 1. Who prescribes the times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives? But what power has Congress in relation to such regulations?

2. How often does Congress assemble? When?

SECTION V.

1. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members; and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide. Organization of Congress.

2. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member. Rules of proceedings.

3. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal. Journal of Congress.

4. Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting. Adjournment of Congress.

SECTION VI.

1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to or returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house they shall not be questioned in any other place. Compensation and privileges of members.

Section V. 1. In respect to what does each house judge? What number makes a quorum? Meaning of quorum? Who may adjourn from day to day? What else may they do?

2. What rules may each house adopt? How many members can expel a member?

3. What is said of a journal of proceedings? What of publishing it? When are the yeas and nays to be entered on the journal?

4. What is said of adjournment?

Section VI. 1. What compensation do members of Congress receive? How paid? In what cases are they exempted from arrest? For what may they not be questioned?

Plurality of
offices pro-
hibited.

2. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office, under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

SECTION VII.

Bills; how
originated.

1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

How bills be-
come laws.

2. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of United States. If he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objection at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such consideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent together with the objections to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But, in all such cases, the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law in like manner, as if he had signed it, unless the Congress, by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

2. What is said of members of Congress holding any civil office? Suppose a person holds an office under the United States, what then?

Section VII. 1. In which house must revenue bills be originated? But what may the Senate do?

2. What must the President of the United States do, in order that a bill may become a law? Suppose he does not approve of it, what does he do? What does the house then do? In order to pass the bill, what number is required? To whom is it then sent? When does it become a law? What further must be done? Within what time must a president return a bill? Suppose he does not return it within ten days?

3. Every order, resolution or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment,) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and, before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and imitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

Approval
and veto
powers of
president

SECTION VIII.

The Congress shall have power—

Powers vested in Congress.

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises; to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises, shall be uniform throughout the United States:

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States:

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes:

4. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies, throughout the United States:

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures:

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States:

7. To establish post-offices and post-roads:

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries:

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court: to define and punish piracies and felonies com-

5 What is necessary that an order, resolution, or vote, of the two houses, may take effect? Suppose the president disapproves of such order, resolution, or vote?

Section VIII. What power has Congress in regard, 1. To taxes, duties, imposts, and excises? To payment of debts? But what must be uniform? 2. As to borrowing money? 3. Regulating commerce? 4. Naturalization? Bankruptcy? 5. Coining money? 6. Counterfeiting? 7. Post-offices? 8. Progress of science

mitted on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations :

10. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water :

11. To raise and support armies ; but no appropriations of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years :

12. To provide and maintain a navy :

13. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces :

14. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions :

15. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress :

16. To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of government of the United States ; and to exercise like authority over all places purchased, by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings :—and,

17. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

and useful arts? 9. Piracies? 10. Declaring war? 11. Armies? 12. Navy? 13. Land and naval forces? 14. Suppression of insurrections? Repelling invasions? 15. Organizing armies and disciplining the militia? 16. Exercising exclusive legislation over seat of government, and all places purchased for the erection of forts, &c.

SECTION IX.

1. The migration or importation of such persons as Emigrants, how admitted. any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight; but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall Habeas corpus. not be suspended, unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

3. No bill of attainder, or ex post facto law, shall be Attainder. passed.

4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, Capitation. unless in proportion to the census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported Regulations regarding duties. from any state. No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue, to the ports of one state over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one state be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

6. No money shall be drawn from the treasury but Moneys, how drawn. in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published, from time to time.

7. No title of nobility shall be granted by the Titles of nobility prohibited. United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

Section IX. 1. What power had Congress in regard to immigrants into the country, prior to 1808? What tax might be imposed?

2. What is said of the writ of habeas corpus?

3. What of bills of attainder, or ex post facto laws?

4. Capitation or direct taxes, how to be laid?

5. What is said of duties on articles Exported from any state? What of preferences? What of vessels from one state to another?

6. When may money be drawn from the treasury? What statement must be published?

7. What is said of titles of nobility? What of persons holding offices of trust accepting presents?

SECTION X.

Powers of
states de-
fined.

1. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts; or grant any title of nobility.

Powers
further
defined.

2. No state shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the neat produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any state on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress. No state shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.

SECTION I.

Executive
power,
in whom
vested.

1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the vice-president, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

How elected.

2. Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in the Congress; but no senator, or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

Section X. 1. What may individual states not do?

2. What are individual states prohibited, as to imposts or duties? What exception is made? To whom does the real produce of all duties and imposts belong? What further are the states prohibited?

ARTICLE II.—*Section I.* 1. In whom is the executive power vested? Duration of his office?

2. By whom chosen? Who chooses the electors? Number in each state? Who may not be an elector?

3. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose, by ballot, one of them for president; and if no person have a majority, then, from the five highest on the list, the said house shall, in like manner, choose the president. But, in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum from each state shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the president, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the vice-president. But, if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them, by ballot, the vice-president.

Proceedings
of electors
and of
House of
Rep.

4. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

Time of
choosing
electors.

3. When do they meet? Number of persons voted for? What list do they make out? To whom are they transmitted? By whom, and before whom, are these votes counted? What number elects? When must the House of Representatives choose a president? How? Suppose no one has a majority, what is done? How many votes has each state? What constitutes, in this case, a quorum? How many states are necessary to a choice? Who is vice-president? When does the Senate choose a vice-president?

4. What is said as to the time of choosing the electors, and of the day on which the latter shall give their votes?

Qualifications of the president.

5. No person, except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

Resort in case of his disability.

6. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice-president; and the Congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as president; and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.

Salary of president.

7. The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected; and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Oath required.

8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:

9. "I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve protect, and defend the constitution of the United States."

SECTION II.

Duties of president.

1. The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer, in each of the execu-

5. Qualifications of a president? Age? How long a resident in the United States?

6. What are the causes of the disability of a president? Upon whom, in such a case, do his duties devolve? What power has Congress in relation to some one who shall act as president?

7. What does the constitution provide in regard to a president's salary? What oath must he take?

Section II. 1. How does the president stand related to the army, navy, and

tive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate shall appoint, ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law. But the Congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

3. The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION III.

1. He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and, in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed; and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

militia? Whose opinion may he require in writing, and on what subjects? What power has he in respect to reprieves and pardons? With what exception?

2. What power has he in respect to treaties? To ambassadors? Consuls? Judges?

3. What vacancies can he fill? Length of such commissions?

Section III. Duties of the president in respect to Congress? When may he convene that body? When adjourn it? His duty in respect to ambassadors? The execution of the laws? Whom is he to commission?

SECTION IV.

How officers,
may be re-
moved.

1. The president, vice-president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III.

SECTION I.

Judicial
power,
how vested.

1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may, from time to time, ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior; and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION II.

To what
cases it
extends.

1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases in law and equity, arising under this constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more states; between a state and citizens of another state; between citizens of different states; between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states; and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

Jurisdiction
the Su-
preme
Court.

2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned,

Section IV. How may all officers of the government be removed? For what crimes?

ARTICLE III.—Section I. How is the judicial power of the United States vested? Tenure of the judges' office? Compensation?

Section II. 1. To what cases does the judicial power extend? To what controversies? To what persons?

2. In what cases has the Supreme Court original jurisdiction? In what cases has it appellate jurisdiction? Meaning of appellate?

the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations, as Congress shall make.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury, and such trial shall be held in the state where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed. Rules respecting trials.

SECTION III.

1. Treason against the United States shall consist in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court. Treason defined.

2. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason; but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted. How punished.

ARTICLE IV.

SECTION I.

1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings, shall be proved, and the effect thereof. Rights of states defined.

SECTION II.

1. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states. Privileges of citizens.

3. Before whom are trials to be held? Where? But when the crime is not in any state?

Section III. 1. What is treason? How may a person be convicted of treason?

2. Who may punish treason? With what limitation?

ARTICLE IV. Section I. How are the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of the states to be treated? How are they to be proved?

Section II. 1. What is said of the privileges of citizens of one state in other states?

Executive
requisitions.

2. A person charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having jurisdiction of the crime.

Law regulat-
ing service,
or labor.

3. No person held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor; but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION III.

New states,
how formed
and admit-
ted.

1. New states may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new states shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state, nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the legislatures of the states concerned, as well as of the Congress.

Power of
Congress
over public
lands.

2. The Congress shall have power to dispose of, and make all needful rules and regulations respecting, the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or any particular state.

SECTION IV.

Republican
government
guaranteed.

1. The United States shall guarantee to every state in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and, on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

2. Suppose a person charged with crime flees into another state, how may he be taken?

3. What is provided, in regard to those held to service, who escape from one state into another?

Section III. 1. What is said of the admission of new states? What of the formation of new states?

2. What power has Congress in respect to the territory or other property belonging to the United States?

Section IV. What guarantees does the constitution make to the several states?

ARTICLE V.

1. The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this constitution; or, on the application of the legislature of two-thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments; which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided, that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

Constitution; how to be amended.

ARTICLE VI.

1. All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this constitution as under the Confederation.

Validity of debts recognized.

2. This constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, any thing in the constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

Supreme law of the land defined.

3. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

Oath; of whom required, and for what?

ARTICLE V. 1. Amendments to the Constitution, how proposed? By whom ratified? With what proviso?

ARTICLE VI. 1. What debts does the Constitution recognize?

2. What constitutes the supreme law of the land?

3. Who are specially bound to support the Constitution? How? What's said of religious tests?

ARTICLE VII.

Ratifica-
tion.

1. The ratification of the convention of nine states shall be sufficient for the establishment of this constitution between the states so ratifying the same.

Done in convention, by the unanimous consent of the states present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, *President,*
and Deputy from Virginia.

Constitu-
tion, when
ratified.

The constitution was ratified by the prescribed number of states in 1788, and went into operation in 1789. Vermont, the first of the new states which joined the Union, gave her assent early in 1791. The number of delegates chosen to the convention was sixty-five; ten did not attend; sixteen declined signing the constitution, or left the convention before it was ready to be signed. Thirty-nine signed as follows:

NEW HAMPSHIRE.	PENNSYLVANIA.	Daniel Carroll.
John Langdon, Nicholas Gilman.	Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Mifflin, Robert Morris, George Clymer, Thomas Fitzsimons, Jared Ingersoll, James Wilson, Gouverneur Morris.	VIRGINIA. John Blair, James Madison, Jr.
MASSACHUSETTS.		NORTH CAROLINA. William Blount, Rich'd Dobbs Spaight, Hugh Williamson.
Nathaniel Gorman, Rufus King.		
CONNECTICUT.	DELAWARE.	SOUTH CAROLINA.
Wm. Samuel Johnson, Roger Sherman.	George Read, Gunning Bedford, Jr., John Dickinson, Richard Bassett, Jacob Broom.	John Rutledge, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, Charles Pinckney, Pierce Butler.
NEW YORK.		
Alexander Hamilton.		
NEW JERSEY.	MARYLAND.	GEORGIA.
William Livingston, David Bearley, William Paterson, Jonathan Dayton.	James M'Henry, Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer,	William Few, Abraham Baldwin.

Attest

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

ARTICLE VII. 1. How many states were required to ratify the Constitution, in order to its establishment? Where did the convention meet which framed the Constitution? Who was president of it? When was it adopted? What states ratified it? Year? When did it go into operation? What new state joined? When? Number of Delegates to the convention? How many signed? Why not all?

AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

At the first session of the first Congress, twelve amendments to the Constitution were recommended to the states, ten of which were adopted; the others have since been adopted.

Art. 1. Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances. Freedom in religion—speech—press.

Art. 2. A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed. Militia.

Art. 3. No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war but in a manner to be prescribed by law. Soldiers.

Art. 4. The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized. Search warrant.

Art. 5. No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service, in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same Capital crimes.

Amendments.—When were amendments proposed? How many? Number adopted?

Art. 1. What is said of an established religion? What of freedom of speech? Of the press? Of the right of petition?

Art. 2. What is said of the right of the people to keep and bear arms?

Art. 3. What of quartering soldiers?

Art. 4. What of warrants and seizures?

Art. 5. What is said of capital or other infamous crimes? Except in what cases? What of double trial for the same offense? What other provisions are made for the protection of citizens?

offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

Trial by jury.

Art. 6. In all criminal prosecutions the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

Suits at common law.

Art. 7. In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined, in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

Bail.

Art. 8. Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishment inflicted.

Certain rights defined.

Art. 9. The enumeration in the constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

Rights reserved.

Art. 10. The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

Judicial power limited.

Art. 11. The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the

Art. 6. What right shall a person accused of crime enjoy? Where? What shall he be informed of? With whom confronted? How obtain witnesses? And by whom aided?

Art. 7. In what suits shall the right of trial by jury be preserved? What is said of the re-examination of facts tried by a jury?

Art. 8. What is said of excessive bail, fines, or punishments?

Art. 9. What is said of rights retained by the people?

Art. 10. What is further said of powers not delegated?

Art. 11. How is the judicial power limited?

United States, by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

Art. 12. § 1. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for president and vice-president, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as president, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as vice-president; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate; the President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for president shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as president, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But, in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a president, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice-president shall act as president, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the president.

Amendment
to Art. II,
Sect. 4, re-
specting
election of
president
and vice-
president

Art. 12. 1. Who elect the president and vice-president? Where must they meet? May both belong to the same state with themselves? How must they vote? What lists must be made? To whom must these lists be sent? Who opens these certificates or lists? In whose presence? Who is declared president? But suppose no one has a majority, what number is selected? Who chooses from the three? How are the votes taken? How many votes has each state? How many constitute a quorum for this purpose? What majority is necessary for a choice? Suppose no choice is made by the House before the 4th of March, who acts as president?

2. The person having the greatest number of votes as vice-president shall be the vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the Senate shall choose the vice-president: a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

3. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of president shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.

2. Who is declared vice-president? Suppose no one has a majority, who elects a vice-president? From whom? What constitutes a quorum for this purpose? What majority is necessary?

3. Who is not eligible to the vice-presidency?

APPENDIX III.

STATES AND TERRITORIES.

THE ORIGINAL THIRTEEN STATES,

WITH THE DATE WHEN EACH RATIFIED THE PRESENT CONSTITUTION.

Delaware,	7th Dec., 1787.	Maryland,	28th April, 1788.
Pennsylvania,	12th " "	S. Carolina,	23d May, "
New Jersey,	18th " "	N. Hampshire,	21st June, "
Georgia,	2d Jan., 1788.	Virginia,	26th " "
Connecticut,	9th " "	New York,	26th July, "
Massachusetts,	6th Feb., "	N. Carolina,	21st Nov., 1789.
Rhode Island, 29th May, 1790.			

THE TWENTY-ONE NEW STATES,

WITH THE DATE WHEN EACH STATE WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION.

Vermont,	4th March, 1791.	Arkansas,	15th June, 1836.
Kentucky,	1st June, 1792.	Michigan,	26th Jan., 1837.
Tennessee,	" " 1796.	Florida,	3d March, 1845.
Ohio,	29th Nov., 1802.	Texas,	29th Dec., 1845.
Louisiana,	8th April, 1812.	Iowa,	28th " 1846.
Indiana,	11th Dec., 1816.	Wisconsin,	29th May, 1848.
Mississippi,	11th " 1817.	California,	9th Dec., 1850.
Illinois,	3d " 1818.	Minnesota,	1858.
Alabama,	14th " 1819.	Kansas,	4th May, 1858.
Maine,	15th March, 1820.	Oregon,	12th Feb., 1859.
Missouri,	10th Aug., 1821.		

THE TERRITORIES,

WITH DATE OF ORGANIZATION.

Dacotah,	1858.	Washington,	1853.
Utah,	9th Sept., 1850.	Nebraska,	30th May, 1854.
New Mexico,	" " "	Indian,	

APPENDIX IV.

TABLE OF PRESIDENTS AND VICE-PRESIDENTS.

PRESIDENTS.	STATES.	INAUGURATED.	TERMINATED.	VICE-PRESIDENTS.
1. George Washington	Virginia ...	April 30, 1789.	March 4, 1797.	John Adams, of Mass.
2. John Adams.....	Mass	March 4, 1797.	" " 1801.	Thomas Jefferson, Va.
3. Thomas Jefferson...	Virginia ...	" " 1801.	" " 1809.	{ Aaron Burr, N. Y., and George Clinton, N. Y.
4. James Madison.....	Virginia ...	" " 1809.	" " 1817.	{ George Clinton, N. Y., and Elbridge Gerry, Mass.
5. James Monroe.....	Virginia ...	" " 1817.	" " 1825.	Daniel D. Tompkins, N. Y.
6. John Q. Adams.....	Mass	" " 1825.	" " 1829.	John C. Calhoun, S. C.
7. Andrew Jackson....	Tenn	" " 1829.	" " 1837.	{ John C. Calhoun, S. C., and Martin Van Buren, N. Y.
8. Martin Van Buren...	N. York....	" " 1837.	" " 1841.	Richard M. Johnson, K. Y.
9. Wm. H. Harrison*.	Ohio.....	" " 1841.	April 4, 1841.	John Tyler, Va.
10. John Tyler.....	Virginia ...	April 4, 1841.	March 4, 1845.	
11. James K. Polk.....	Tenn	March 4, 1845.	" " 1849.	George M. Dallas, Penn.
12. Zachary Taylor†...	Louisiana..	" " 5, 1849.	July 9, 1850.	Millard Fillmore, N. Y.
13. Millard Fillmore....	N. York....	July 9, 1850.	March 4, 1853.	
14. Franklin Pierce.....	N. Hamp...	March 4, 1853.	" " 1857.	Wm. R. King, Ala.
15. James Buchanan....	Penn	" " 1857.		John C. Breckinridge, Ky.

* Died April 4, 1841, and was succeeded by the Vice-President, John Tyler.

† Died July 9, 1850, and was succeeded by the Vice-President, Millard Fillmore.

APPENDIX V.

PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE REVOLUTION.

Dates.	Battles.	Commanders.	Number engaged.	Kil'd, wounded, and prisoners.	Victorious.
1775.					
Apr. 19.	Lexington	Parker.....	unknown	90	Americans.
		Smith	1700	280	
June 17.	Bunker Hill	Prescott.....	1000	450	British.
		Howe	3000	1000	
Dec. 31	Quebec.....	Montgomery	1000	400	British.
		Carleton	1200	trifling	
1776.					
June 28.	Fort Moultrie.....	Moultrie.....	400	32	Americans.
		Parker.....	4000	200	
Aug. 28.	Long Island.....	Putnam.....	17000	3300	British.
		Howe	24000	400	
Oct. 28.	White Plains.....	McDougal ..	1600	350	British.
		Leslie	2000	350	
Nov. 16.	Ft. Washington..	Magaw	3000	3000	British.
		Howe.....	12000	1000	
Dec. 26.	Trenton.....	Washington	2400	10	Americans.
		Rahl.....	1500	1000	
1777.					
Jan. 3.	Princeton.....	Washington	5000	100	Americans.
		Mawhood....	1800	400	
Aug. 16.	Bennington.....	Stark.	2000	100	Americans.
		Baum	1200	600	
Sept. 11.	Brandywine.....	Washington	11000	1000	British.
		Howe	18000	500	
Sept. 19.	Stillwater.....	Gates.....	3500	350	Americans.
		Burgoyne ...	3000	500	
Sept. 20.	Paoli	Wayne	1500	300	British.
		Grey.....	3500	7	
Oct. 4.	Germantown.	Washington	11000	1200	British.
		Howe.....	15000	500	
Oct. 7.	2d Stillwater, or	Gates.....	8000	80	Americans.
	Saratoga.....	Burgoyne....	4500	400	
Oct. 22.	Fort Mercer.....	Greene.....	450	32	Americans.
		Donop.	1200	400	
Nov. 10.	Fort Mifflin.....	Smith.....	600	unknown	British.
		Howe	2500		

Dates.	Battles.	Commanders.	Number engaged.	Kil'd, wounded, and prisoners.	Victorious.
1778.					
June 28.	Monmouth.....	Washington	12000	330	Americans.
		Clinton.....	11000	450	
Aug. 29.	Rhode Island....	Sullivan	10000	211	British.
		Pigot.....	6000	260	
July. 3.	Wyoming.....	Butler.....	450	450	British.
		Butler and Brandt....			
Dec. 29.	Savannah.....	Howe.....	900	538	British.
		Campbell....	2000	26	
1779.					
March 3.	Briar Creek.....	Ash.....	2000	1550	British.
		Prevost.....	900	16	
July 15.	Stony Point.....	Wayne.....	1500	100	Americans.
		Vaughan....	600	600	
Oct. 9.	Savannah.....	Lincoln.....	4500	1000	British.
		Prevost.....	5000	55	
Sept. 23.	Paul Jones' vic'y	Jones.....	small	300	Americans.
		Pearson.....	squadron 2 vessels	total force	
1780.					
May 12.	Charleston.....	Lincoln.....	7500	5800	British.
		Clinton.....	8000	255	
May 29	Waxhaw.....	Buford.....	400	320	British.
		Tarleton.....	1000	20	
Aug. 6.	Hanging Rock...	Sumpter.....	800		Americans.
			300	291	
Aug. 16.	Camden.....	Gates.....	4000	1800	British.
		Cornwallis..	2200	325	
Oct. 7.	King's Mountain	Campbell....	1000	20	Americans.
		Ferguson....	1200	950	
1781.					
Jan. 17.	Cowpens.....	Morgan.....	1000	80	Americans.
		Tarleton.....	1000	630	
March 15.	Guilford.....	Greene... ..	4500	400	British.
		Cornwallis..	2000	530	
April 25.	Hobkirk's Hill...	Greene.....	1200	250	British.
		Rawdon.....	900	250	
Sept. 8.	Eutaw Springs...	Greene.....	2200	700	Doubtful.
		Stewart.....	2000	700	
Oct. 19.	Yorktown	Washington	16000	300	Americans.
		Cornwallis..	7500	7500	

APPENDIX VI.

PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE WAR OF 1812.

Dates.	Battles.	Commanders.	Number engaged	Kil'd, wound- ed, and prisoners.	Victorious.
1812.					
Aug. 5.	Brownstown.....	Van Horne..	200	47	British.
			700	trifling	
Aug. 9.	Brownstown.....	Miller.....	600	54	Americans.
		Tecumseh....	900	150	
Oct. 13.	Queenstown.....	Van Renssel- Brock....[aer	1000 2000	1000 300	British.

NAVAL BATTLES.—1812.

The Guerriere captured by the Constitution,.....	August 19th.
The Frolic " " Wasp,.....	October 18th.
The Macedonian " " United States,.....	October 25th.
The Java " " Constitution,.....	December 29th.

1813.					
Jan. 22.	Frenchtown.....	Winchester..	800	800	British.
		Proctor.....	1500		
April 27.	York.....	Pike.....	1700	320	Americans.
		Sheaffe.....	1500	800	
May 5.	Fort Meigs.....	Clay.....	1200	600	British.
		Proctor.....	2000		
May 29.	Sackett's Harbor	Brown.....	1000		Americans.
		Prevost.....	1000		
Aug. 2.	Lower Sandusky	Croghan.....	150		Americans.
		Proctor.....	1300	150	
Oct. 5.	Thames.....	Harrison.....	3500	250	Americans.
		Proctor.....	2000	900	
Nov. 11.	Williamsburg...	Boyd.....	1500	320	British.
			1500	190	

NAVAL BATTLES.—1813.

The Peacock captured by the Hornet,.....	February 24th.
The Chesapeake " " Shannon,.....	June 1st.
The Argus " " Pelican,.....	August 14th.
The Boxer " " Enterprise,.....	September 5th.
Perry's victory on Lake Erie,.....	September 10th.

Dates.	Battles.	Commanders.	Number engaged.	Kil'd, wounded, and prisoners.	Victorious.
1814.					
July 5.	Chippeway.....	Brown.....	3500	338	Americans.
		Riall.....	4000	500	
July 25.	Lundy's Lane....	Brown.....	3500	858	Americans.
		Drummond..	5000	878	
Aug. 15.	Assault on Fort Erie	Gaines.....	2500	84	Americans.
		Drummond..	5000	1000	
Sept. 17.	Sortie from Fort Erie.....	Brown.....	2000	500	Americans.
		Drummond..	4000	900	
Aug. 24.	Bladensburg.....	Winder.....	6000		British.
		Ross.....	5000		
Sept. 11.	Plattsburg.....	Prevost.....	14000	2500	Americans.
		Macomb.....	2000	450	
Sept. 12.	North Point.....	Stricker.....	3500		British.
		Ross.....	6000		
Sept. 13.	Fort McHenry....	Armistead...	1000		Americans.
		Cochrane....	16 ships.		

NAVAL BATTLES.—1814.

The Essex captured by two British ships.....	March 28th.
The Epervier captured by the Peacock—Am.,.....	April 29th.
The Reindeer captured by the Wasp—Am.,.....	June 28th.
McDonough's victory on Lake Champlain.....	September 11th.

1815.

Jan. 8.	New Orleans.....	Jackson.....	6000	13	Americans.
		Pakenham..	12000	2000	

NAVAL BATTLES.—1815.

The Cyane and Levant captured by the Constitution.....	February 20th.
The Penguin captured by the Hornet—Am.,.....	March 23d.

APPENDIX VII.

PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE MEXICAN WAR.

Dates.	Battles.	Commanders.	Number engaged.	Kil'd, wounded, and prisoners.	Victorious.
1846.					
May 8.	Palo Alto	Taylor.....	2300	49	Americans.
		Arista.....	6000	500	
May 9.	Resaca de la Pal- ma	Taylor.. ..	2200	150	Americans.
		Arista.....	6000	300	
Sept. 21.	Monterey	Taylor.....	6600	488	Americans.
		Ampudia....	10000		
Dec. 25.	Bracito	Doniphan...	900	trifling	Americans.
			1000	150	
1847.					
Feb. 22.	Buena Vista	Taylor.....	4700	746	Americans.
		Santa Anna..	17000	2000	
Feb. 28.	Sacramento.....	Doniphan....	900	20	Americans.
		Heredia.....	3570	100	
March 27.	Vera Cruz.....	Scott	12000	45	Americans.
		Morales.....	6000	6000	
April 18.	Cerro Gordo.	Scott	8000	250	Americans.
		Santa Anna..	15000	3500	
Aug. 20.	Contreras	Scott	4000	450	Americans.
		Valencia.....	7000	2500	
Aug. 20.	Churubusco.....	Scott	8500	650	Americans.
		Santa Anna..	30000	2500	
Sept. 8.	Molino del Rey, and Casa Mata	Worth.....	3150	789	Americans.
		Santa Anna..	14000	1900	
Sept. 13.	Chapultepec	Scott	7200	862	Americans.
		Santa Anna..	25000	4800	

APPENDIX VIII.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF AMERICAN HISTORY.

A. D.	Discovery of America.	Page
1000.	The Norwegians discover Labrador,.....	1
1170.	The Welsh cross the Atlantic,.....	1
1302.	Mariner's Compass first used,.....	2
1435.	Birth of Christopher Columbus,.....	2
1492.	August 3d, Columbus sails from Palos,.....	3
“	October 11, Discovers America,	5
1493.	January 1st, returns to Spain,	5
“	September 25th, starts on a Second voyage,.....	6
1497.	June 24th, Cabot discovers New Foundland,.....	11
1498.	Columbus undertakes a Third voyage,.....	7
1500.	Cabral discovers Brazil,.....	12
1501.	Discovery of Labrador by Cortereal.....	13
1502.	Fourth voyage of Columbus,.....	8
1504.	He returns to Spain,.....	9
“	The name of America given to the new country,....	10
1512.	Ponce de Leon visits Florida,.....	17
1513.	Discovery of the Pacific by Balboa,	15
1517.	Cordova explores the coast of Mexico,	16
1519.	Expedition of Cortez to Mexico,.....	16
“	Voyage of Magellan,.....	12
1520.	He enters the Pacific.....	12
“	Unsuccessful voyage of Vasquez de Ayllon to South Carolina,.....	17
1521.	The Spaniards recapture Mexico,.....	17
1524.	Verrazanni receives a commission to make discove- ries,	14
1525.	Second attempt of Vasquez to settle on the coast of South Carolina,.....	17

A. D.	Page
1528. Expedition of Narvaez to Florida,.....	18
1534. Voyage of James Cartier,.....	14
1539. Expedition of Ferdinand de Soto,.....	18
1540. He reaches the Mississippi,.....	18
“ Lord Roberval appointed Viceroy of New France,	14
1562. Settlement at Port Royal, S. C., by the French Huguenots,	14
1565. Another settlement by the same on St. John's River, Florida,.....	14
“ Foundation of St. Augustine by Melendez,.....	20
“ September 21st, Massacre of the Huguenots at Fort Carolina.....	20
1568. De Gourgues avenges the massacre	20
1576. Voyage of Martin Frobisher,.....	11
1578. Circumnavigation of the Globe by Sir Francis Drake,.....	12

Settlement of Colonies, &c.

1578. A Patent is granted to Sir Humphrey Gilbert to make discoveries,.....	21
1584. Sir Walter Raleigh obtains a grant of land in America, and sends Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow to Virginia,	22
1585. He sends out Sir R. Grenville. Colony on Roanoke Island,.....	22
1587. Third colony established on Roanoke Island,.....	23
1589. Raleigh sells his Patent to a London Company,....	23
1602. Expedition of B. Gosnold. Discovery of Cape Cod,	23
1605. Settlement of Port Royal, Acadia, by De Monts...	24
1607. May 23d, Settlement began at Jamestown,.....	25
“ Captain John Smith visits the Colony,.....	25
1608. Foundation of Quebec by Champlain,.....	24
1609. Captain Smith returns to England,.....	27
1609. First settlement on the Hudson River,.....	28
1613. Settlement on Manhattan Island,.....	28
1615. Erection of Fort Orange,.....	28
1620. Commencement of Slavery in America,.....	27
“ December 21st, Landing of the Pilgrims,	31
1623. Settlements established at Dover and Portsmouth..	31
“ The Dutch settle at Nassau, New Jersey,.....	34
1624. Neat Cattle first introduced into New England,....	45
1628. Settlement of Salem on Massachusetts Bay,.....	31
1629. Importation into Massachusetts of 140 head of cattle	45

A. D.		Page
1630.	Foundation of Boston by John Winthrop.....	31
"	Settlement by the Dutch on Staten Island,.....	35
"	Carolina granted to Sir Robert Heath,.....	37
1632.	Maryland granted to Sir George Calvert,.....	35
1633.	Settlement of Connecticut began at the House of Good Hope,	29
"	Rye raised for the first time in Massachusetts,	45
1634	Settlement of Maryland began,	36
1636.	Th. Hooker settles in Connecticut,.....	32
"	Settlement of Rhode Island. Roger Williams founds Providence,	32
1637	First Synod convened in America,.....	45
"	June 1st, the Pequot War,.....	52
1638.	Introduction of Slavery into Massachusetts,.....	41
1639.	Formation of the first Baptist Church,.....	46
"	First printing executed in New England,.....	49
1642.	Dutch Reformed Church, New York,	46
1643.	Union of the New England Colonies,.....	34
"	Colonization of Pennsylvania,.....	36
"	Settlement of Delaware,	37
1664.	Surrender of the New Netherlands to the English,	29
1650.	First settlement of North Carolina,.....	37
"	Introduction of Slavery into Rhode Island,.....	41
1651.	First Navigation Act,.....	53
1656.	Introduction of Slavery into New York,.....	53
"	First appearance of Quakers in Massachusetts,....	46
1663.	Introduction of Slavery into Maryland,.....	41
"	The whole of Carolina granted to Lord Clarendon,.	37
1664.	Foundation of Elizabethtown, N. Y. by the En- glish,	34
1665.	Charter granted to the proprietors of New Jersey,	35
1668.	Introduction of Slavery into New Jersey,	41
1670.	First English settlement of South Carolina,.....	38
1675.	King Philip's War,	53
1676.	General Court of Massachusetts opposes Navigation Act,.....	43
1680.	Foundation of Charleston, S. C.,.....	38
1681.	William Penn receives a grant of Pennsylvania,...	36
1683.	The charters of New England annulled,.....	51
1688.	English Revolution,	51
1689.	King William's War,.....	56
1690.	Introduction of Slavery into Delaware and Pennsyl- vania—Indian Wars,	41

A. D.		Page
1692.	A new Charter granted to the New England Colonies,.....	52
1693.	Introduction of Episcopacy into New York,.....	47
1697.	Peace of Ryswick.—End of King William's War,..	56
1702.	New Jersey becomes a Royal Province,.....	35
"	Queen Anne's War,	56
"	Expedition against St. Augustine,.....	53
"	Introduction of Episcopacy into New Jersey,.....	47
1703.	Expedition of Governor Moore, of South Carolina, against the Apalachian Indians,.....	53
"	Introduction of Episcopacy into South Carolina,....	47
1704.	Introduction of Episcopacy into Connecticut.....	47
"	First newspaper issued in America,.....	49
1711.	Tuscarora War,	54
1713.	March, Defeat of the Tuscaroras, in the present Greene County, N. C.,	54
"	Peace of Utrecht closes Queen Anne's War,.....	57
1715.	Yemassee War,	55
"	Defeat of the Yemassees at Salkehatchie	55
"	Peace concluded with the Tuscaroras,	55
"	Proprietary government vested in second Lord Baltimore,.....	36
1718.	Death of William Penn,.....	37
1729.	The Carolinas become Royal Provinces,	38
1732.	Settlement of Georgia begun,.....	38
"	Feb. 22d, Birth of Washington,	59
1733.	Foundation of Savannah,.....	38
1737.	Religious revival,.....	46
1738.	Arrival of Whitefield in America,	46
1744.	War between England and France—King George's War,	52
1745.	Reduction of Louisburg,	57
1748.	Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle,	58
1750.	Ohio Company chartered,.....	58
1752.	Georgia becomes a Royal government,.....	38
1754.	Washington sent against Fort Duquesne,	59
"	June 19, A plan of union proposed by seven Colonies, which met at Albany,.....	60
1755.	Braddock's Expedition and Defeat,.....	61
1756.	War declared between France and England,.....	62
1759.	Wolfe wins the battle of Abram's Heights, and loses his life,	62

Revolutionary Periods.		Page
A. D.		
1761.	Writs of Assistance,	64
1763.	Peace of Paris,	63
1764.	Sugar Act passed,	65
1765.	Stamp Act proposed, February 7th; became a law, March 23d,	66
"	Second Colonial Congress at New York, October 7,	69
1766.	Stamp Act repealed, March 18,	72
1767.	Duties laid on tea, glass, paints, and colors,	74
1770.	Non-importation Associations,	75
"	Repeal of the act upon all taxed articles except tea,	76
1771.	May 16th, <i>First blood</i> of the Revolution shed at Al- amance Creek, N. C.,	76
1773.	British attempt to import tea into the Colonies,	77
"	Reception of the tea at Charleston and Boston,	77
"	June 1st, Boston Port Bill,	77
1774.	September 5th, First Continental Congress at Phila- delphia,	80
"	It promulgates Bills of Rights, and petitions the King,	80
"	October 26, The Colonies arm for defense,	81
1775	Trade of the Colonies restricted,	83
"	April 19, Lexington and Concord,	83
"	" 21, Popular excitement. The people of Charleston seize the gunpowder and arms in the State House,	84
"	May 11, The citizens of Savannah take possession of the King's magazine,	85
"	May 10, Attack on Ticonderoga and Crown Point,	86
"	" 15, Convention of the people of Mecklenburg, North Carolina,	86
"	May 10, Second Continental Congress,	86
"	Congress orders the formation of a regular marine, .	86
"	June 19, Bunker Hill,	87
"	September, Expedition against Canada,	88
"	November 3, Surrender of St. John's,	88
"	" 13, Surrender of Montreal,	88
"	December 31, Unsuccessful attack upon Quebec,	88
1776.	March 17, The English evacuate Boston,	90
"	June 28, Defense of Fort Moultrie, S. C.,	91
"	" 28, Landing of Gen. Howe on Staten Island,	117
"	July 4, Declaration of Independence,	94

A. D.	Page
1776. July 11th and 12th, Gen. Howe is joined by Sir Henry Clinton, and Admiral Howe with a fleet from England,.....	118
“ Occupation of Long Island by Gen. Greene,	121
“ August 27, Landing of a British army on Long Island,	121
“ August 28, Battle of Long Island. Defeat of the Americans,.....	122
“ August 29th, The American army retreat from Long Island,.....	124
“ September 12, Washington retires higher up the Hudson,	126
“ October 28, Battle of White Plains,	126
“ November 16, Surrender of Fort Washington,.....	127
“ “ 28, Occupation of Rhode Island by the British; Washington crosses the Delaware,	128
“ December 13, Gen. Lee taken prisoner,	128
“ “ 25, Washington recrosses the Delaware, .	129
“ “ 26, Battle of Trenton,.....	130
1777. January 3, Battle of Princeton,.....	130
“ April, Arrival of the Marquis de La Fayette,.....	132
“ Congress adopts the present national colors,.....	163
“ April, Tryon's expedition. His defeat,	133
“ June, Expedition of Burgoyne against Ticonderoga,	134
“ June, The English take the forts on the Hudson, ..	134
“ August 6, Defeat of Gen. Herkimer,	135
“ August 16, Success of Col. Stark and his Green Mountain Boys,.....	135
“ September 11, Battle of Brandywine,	133
“ “ 19, Battle of Stillwater,.....	136
“ October 4, Washington's attack on Germantown, ..	134
“ “ 7, Battle of Saratoga,	135
“ “ 17, Surrender of the British army,.....	135
“ November 17, Report of the Committee on the Confederation,	160
1778. February, Treaty between France and the United States,.....	136
“ June 2, Parliament proposes reconciliation.....	137
“ “ 18, Evacuation of Philadelphia,.....	138
“ “ 28, Battle of Monmouth,.....	138
“ November, An expedition is sent against Savannah,	139
“ December 29, Surrender of Savannah,	139
1779. Invasion of South Carolina,	139

A. D.		Page
1779.	May, Attempt of Prevost upon Charleston. He is repulsed,.....	140
"	July 16th, The forts on the Hudson recaptured by the Americans,.....	142
"	Daring exploits of Paul Jones on the coast of Scotland and England,.....	144
"	Oct. 9, Americans and French repulsed at Savannah,.....	143
"	The articles of the Confederation adopted by thirteen of the States,.....	160
1780.	Feb. 11, Landing of the English near Charleston,..	144
"	March 29, The city is invested,	145
"	May 12, Surrender of Charleston,	145
"	Partisan warfare at the South,.....	146
"	August 16, Battle of Camden,.....	148
"	Arnold's treason discovered at West Point.....	151
"	October 7, Battle of King's Mountain,.....	148
"	December 3, Greene takes the command of the Southern army,.....	152
1781.	January 17, Battle of Cowpens, S. C.,.....	152
"	March 15, Battle of Guilford, N. C.,	153
"	April 25, Battle of Hobkirk Hill,	153
"	May, Capture of Fort Watson, Fork Motte, and Nelson's Ferry,.....	154
"	September 8, Battle of Eutaw Springs,	155
"	28, Siege of Yorktown begun,	156
"	October 19, Surrender of Cornwallis,	156
1782.	November 30, Preliminary articles of Peace signed at Paris,.....	157
1782.	January 20, Treaty of peace between the French and the English,	157
"	July 11, The English evacuate Savannah,	158
"	December 14, Evacuation of Charleston,.....	158
1783.	April 19, Cessation of hostilities proclaimed,	158
"	September 3, Treaty of Peace signed at Paris,	157
"	November 3, Washington disbands his army,	158
"	25, Evacuation of New York,.....	158

Constitutional Government.

1786.	Commissioners meet at Annapolis and appoint Deputies to meet at Philadelphia,	161
1787.	May, Washington appointed President of the Convention,	161

A. D.		Page
1787.	September 17, Constitution adopted by Congress,..	161
"	December 7, Constitution ratified by Delaware.	289
"	" 12, " " by Pennsylvania.	
"	" 18, " " by New Jersey.	
1788.	January 2, " " by Georgia.	
"	" 9, " " by Connecticut.	
"	February 6, " " by Massachusetts.	
"	April 28, " " by Maryland.	
"	May 23, " " by South Carolina.	
"	June 21, " " by New Hampshire.	
"	" 26, " " by Virginia.	
"	July 26, " " by New York.	
1789.	Novem. 21, " " by North Carolina.	
1790.	May 29, " " by Rhode Island.	

1789—1797. Washington's Administration.

1789.	March 4, Washington elected President,	167
"	April 30, His Inauguration,	168
1790.	War with the Indians north of the Ohio,	168
1791.	The Whisky Insurrection,	170
"	Formation of a Bank of the United States,	171
"	February, Admission of Vermont into the Union,	171
1792.	June, " of Kentucky " " " "	171
1793.	April, Arrival at Charleston of the French Minister,	169
1794.	November 19, Jay's Treaty with Great Britain,	170
1795.	Gen. Wayne negotiates a treaty with the Indians, ..	168
1796.	June, Admission of Tennessee into the Union,	171
"	September, Washington issues his Farewell Address,	171

1797—1801. John Adams's Administration.

1797.	March 4, Inauguration of John Adams, Second President,	172
"	July, Deputies sent to France to adjust difficulties, ..	173
1799.	The U. S. frigate Constellation captures the French frigate L'Insurgente,	173
"	December 14, Death of Washington,	174
1800.	February 1, Action between the Constellation and La Vengeance,	173
"	September 30, Treaty of Peace with France,	173

A D.		Page
1800.	Removal of the seat of Government to the District of Columbia,	175
1801—1809. Thomas Jefferson's Administration.		
1801.	March 4, Inauguration of Jefferson. Third President,	176
"	June, Capture of American vessels by Tripolitan cruisers,	177
"	A squadron sent to put Tripoli under blockade,....	177
1803.	Purchase of Louisiana for \$15,000,000,.....	176
"	Another squadron sent to the Mediterranean. Capture of U. S. frigate Philadelphia,.....	177
1804.	February 3, Brilliant action of Decatur at Tripoli,..	177
"	July, Duel between Hamilton and Burr,.....	179
"	Jefferson is re-elected President,	179
1805.	April 27th, Capture of Dern by Gen. Eaton,	178
1807.	June, Outrage on the U. S. frigate Chesapeake,....	180
"	November, <i>Orders in Council</i> , issued by England,..	181
"	December, American Government lays an embargo, 181	
1809—1817. James Madison's Administration.		
1809.	March 4, Inauguration of James Madison, Fourth President,.....	182
"	June, Embargo repealed,.....	183
"	August 10, Non-Intercourse Law re-established, ...	183
1810.	Decree of Rambouillet,	183
"	May 1, Act passed by Congress, excluding English and French war vessels from the waters of the United States,.. ..	183
"	November 2, Repeal of the French Decrees. Renewal of Intercourse,.....	183
1811.	May 16, Engagement between the Little Belt and the President,	183
"	June, Congress prepares for war with England,	184
"	November 7, Battle of Tippecanoe,.....	184
1812.	July 12, Gen. Hull invades Canada,	184
"	August 16, His surrender,	185
"	" 19, U. S. frigate Constitution captures the British frigate Guerriere,	186
"	September 7, U. S. frigate Essex captures the British sloop-of-war Albert,.....	186

A. D.		Page
1812.	October 13, Defeat at Qucenstown,.....	186
"	" 18, U. S. ship Wasp captures the British ship Frolic. Both are afterward taken by the Poictiers,	187
"	October 25, Frigate United States captures the Macedonian,	187
"	December 29, Capture of the British brig Java,.....	187
1813.	January 22, Battle at Frenchtown,	188
"	February, The Hornet captures the British sloop-of-war Peacock,.....	195
"	April, Commissioners meet at Ghent to negotiate the Peace,	197
"	April 27, Attack upon Fort York. Death of Gen. Pike,	189
"	May 27, Attack of Fort George by Dearborn,.....	190
"	" 29, Attack upon Sackett's Harbor,.....	190
"	June, The Chesapeake captured by the Shannon,...	195
"	August 2, Gallant defense of Fort Sandusky,.....	189
"	August 14, The Argus captured by the British ship Pelican,	195
"	September 5, The British brig Boxer surrenders to the Enterprise,	195
"	September 10, Perry's Victory on Lake Erie,.....	191
"	October, Battle of the Thames,.....	193
"	November 11, The Americans attack Williamsburgh,	194
1814.	July 3, Americans take Fort Erie,.....	195
"	July 5, Battle of Chippewa,.....	195
"	" 25, Battle of Bridgewater,.....	195
"	September 11, The British fleet on Lake Champlain defeated,.....	196
"	September, Attack on the fort of Plattsburg,.....	196
"	" The British defeated near Baltimore,.	197
"	December 15, Meeting of the Hartford Convention,	198
"	" 24, Treaty of Ghent, between England and the United States,.....	197
1815.	January 8, Battle of New Orleans,.....	198
"	June 7, Decatur captures an African frigate,.....	199
"	" 30, The Dey of Algiers brought to sign a treaty,	199
"	July, Expedition of Decatur against Tunis,.....	199
"	August, Another against Tripoli.....	199
1816.	Incorporation of the Bank of the United States,...	200
"	December. Indiana admitted into the Union,	200

1817—1825. Administration of Monroe.

1817. March 4, Inauguration of Monroe. Fifth President,	200
“ December 11, Mississippi admitted into the Union,.	200
1818. Illinois admitted,.....	201
“ War with the Semimole Indians,.....	201
1819. February 22, Florida ceded to the United States, ..	202
“ March 22, Arkansas Territory organized,	202
“ December 14, Alabama admitted into the Union,...	202
1820. Maine becomes an independent State,.....	202
1821. Missouri admitted into the Union,.....	202
“ March, Re-election of Monroe,.....	203
1824. Visit of La Fayette to the United States,.....	203

1825—1829. Administration of J. Q. Adams.

1825. March 4, Inauguration of J. Q. Adams. Sixth President.....	205
1826. February, Removal of the Indians,	206
1826. July 4, Fiftieth Anniversary of the Declaration of Independence,	205
“ July 4, Deaths of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson,	206
“ September, Excitement against the Free Masons,..	207
1828. Congress increases duties on cotton, woolen, and linen fabrics, &c.,	207

1829—1837. Administration of Andrew Jackson. Seventh President.

1829. March 4, Inauguration of Andrew Jackson,.....	209
1832. November 19, a Convention Assembles at Columbia, South Carolina, and pass the Nullification Act,..	210
“ December, President Jackson issues a Proclamation to sustain the Tariff laws. Counter Proclamation of Governor Hayne of South Carolina,	210
1833. March 1, Compromise Tariff,	211
“ “ 11, Nullification Act repealed,.....	211
“ “ 4, Jackson inaugurated for a second term,...	211
“ September, Removal of the States' funds from the United States Bank,	211
1834. Resolution passed by the Senate censuring the President for that measure,.....	212
“ Difficulties with France,	212

1835. December 16, Great fire in New York,.....	213
1836. June 15, Arkansas and Michigan admitted into the Union,	213
“ National Debt is extinguished. Surplus in the Treasury,	213
1837. January 16, Expunging resolution of the Senate in reference to their vote of censure of 1834,.....	212

1837—1841. Administration of Martin Van Buren. Eighth President.

1837. Suspension of Specie Payments in New York,.....	215
“ September 4, Extra Session of Congress opened,...	215
1838. War began with the Indians of Florida,.....	217
“ August 13, Banks resume Specie Payments,....	216
“ October, The Banks of Philadelphia suspend,.....	216
1839. Difficulties with Maine,	218
1840. December, Suspension of the Florida War,.....	217
“ Sub-treasury Bill passed by Congress,.....	221

1841—1845. Administration of William Henry Harrison. Ninth President.

1841. March 4, Inauguration of Harrison,.....	220
“ April 4, Death of Harrison,	220
“ “ John Tyler assumes the Government,	221
“ May 31, Extra Session of Congress. Repeal of Sub-Treasury Bill,	219
“ Fiscal Bank Bill. The President vetoes it.....	221
“ August 6, Bankrupt Bill passed,.....	222
“ Troubles in Rhode Island,.....	222
1842. New Tariff Law enacted,.....	223
“ September, North-Eastern Boundary settled,.....	223
1845. Annexation of Texas.	223
“ March, Diplomatic intercourse with Mexico broken off,	224

1845—1849. Administration of James K. Polk. Eleventh President.

1845. March 4, Inauguration of James K. Polk,.....	225
“ Repeal of the Bankrupt Bill,	222
“ June 8, Death of General Jackson,.....	213
“ Troops ordered to the Rio Grande,.....	226
1846. March, General Taylor concentrates an army at Corpus Christi,	228

1846.	April, Hostilities commenced in Mexico. Captain Thornton's dragoons surprised,	228	×
"	May 8, Battle of Palo Alto,	229	
"	" 9, Battle of Resaca de la Palma,	229	
"	" 11, War declared,	229	
"	June, North-western Boundary settled,	226	
"	" Invasion of the Territory of New Mexico, ..	231	
"	July, Measures modifying the Tariff laws of 1842, ..	226	
"	August 18, Capture of Santa Fe,	231	
"	" Fremont's Expedition,	232	
"	September 21, Storming of Monterey,	230	
"	December, Doniphan's Expedition,	232	
"	Arrival of General Scott at the field of war,	233	
1847.	February 22, Battle of Buena Vista,	234	
"	" 28, Defeat of the Mexicans at the Pass of Sacramento,	232	
"	March 1, Capture of the city of Chihuahua,	232	
"	" 27, Capture of Vera Cruz,	235	
"	April 18, Storming of Cerro Gordo,	235	
"	May 15, The Americans enter Puebla,	236	
"	August 20, Battles of Contrera and Churubusco,	236	
"	" 23, An armistice agreed upon,	237	
"	September 7, General Scott recommences the hostilities,	237	
"	September 8, Storming of Molino Del Rey,	238	
"	" 14, the Americans take possession of the city of Mexico,	238	
1848.	February 2, Negotiations for peace begun,	239	
"	March 10, Ratification of the Treaty of Peace,	239	
"	Admission of Wisconsin into the Union,	240	

1849—1853, Administration of General Taylor. Twelfth President.

1849.	March 4, Inauguration of General Taylor,	240
"	Controversy about Hungary,	244
1850.	April 3, Death of John C. Calhoun,	242
"	" Cuban expedition,	242
"	July 9, Death of President Taylor,	243
"	August, Compromise measures adopted,	240
1851.	Lopez's attempt upon Cuba,	244
1852.	June 29, Death of Henry Clay,	246
"	October 24, Death of Daniel Webster,	246

 1853—1857, Administration of Franklin Pierce. Fourteenth President.

1853.	March 4, Inauguration of Franklin Pierce,.....	247
"	Expedition sent out to lay the plan of the Pacific Railroad,	248
"	Kosztka affair,	248
1854.	January, Bill of Mr. Douglas for the organization of Nebraska and Kansas Territories,	249
"	May, the bill is adopted,	249
"	Popular Sovereignty, Kansas difficulty,	249
"	Pro-Slavery party elect Delegates, and draw up a code of laws for the government of the Kansas Territory,	250
"	Anti-Slavery party meet at Topeka and draw up a Constitution,	250
"	Two antagonistic authorities established—civil war results—and the President appoints a governor to restore tranquillity,	250
1854.	February 28, Difficulties with Spain—seizure of the Black Warrior,	250
"	The President sends a messenger to Spain to demand redress. Difficulties settled,	251
"	June 1, The President issues a Proclamation forbidding filibustering,	251
1857.	March 4, James Buchanan inaugurated fifteenth President,	251

1857—1861, Administration of James Buchanan. Fifteenth President.

1857.	Revulsion in business. Mormon difficulties,	252
1858.	Minnesota admitted,	253
1859.	Expedition to Paraguay. John Brown seizes the United States Arsenal at Harper's Ferry; is taken, and with six companions hanged. Oregon admitted,	253
1860.	Arrival of Japanese embassy,	253
"	December 20, Secession Ordinance passed by South Carolina,	253
1861.	January 9, Mississippi secedes,	253
"	" 11, Alabama and Florida secede,	253
"	" 19, Georgia secedes,	253
"	" 26, Louisiana secedes,	253

1861. January 30, Kansas admitted,.....	253
“ February 1, Texas secedes,.....	254
“ “ 4, Peace Conference assembles at Wash- ington—“Confederacy” formed at Montgomery, Alabama,	254
“ February 8, Davis elected Provisional President of “the Confederate States,”.....	254

1861—1865, Administration of Abraham Lincoln, Sixteenth President.

1861. March 4, Lincoln Inaugurated,.....	255
“ April 13, Fall of Sumter,.....	256
“ “ 15, President calls for 75,000 men,.....	256
“ “ 17, Virginia secedes,.....	256
“ “ 18, Confederates seize Harper’s Ferry,.....	256
“ “ 19, Volunteers attacked in Baltimore,.....	256
“ “ 20, Confederates seize Norfolk Navy Yard,...	256
“ May 3, President calls for 82,748 men,.....	257
“ “ 6, Arkansas secedes,.....	257
“ “ 20, North Carolina secedes,.....	257
“ June 3, Union victory at Phillippi, Va.,.....	257
“ “ 8, Tennessee secedes,.....	257
“ “ 10, Union repulse at Big Bethel, Va.,.....	257
“ “ 11, Union Victory at Romney, Va.,.....	257
“ July 5, Battle near Carthage, Mo.,.....	258
“ “ 11, Union victory at Rich Mountain, Va.,....	258
“ “ 14, Union victory at Carriek’s Ford, Va.,.....	258
“ “ 20, Confederate Congress meets at Richmond.	258
“ “ 21, Union defeat at Bull Run, Va.,.....	258
“ August 10, Battle of Wilson’s Creek, Mo.,.....	258
“ “ 29, Forts at Hatteras Inlet, North Carolina, captured	258
“ September 10, Union victory at Carnifex Ferry, Va.,	258
“ “ 20, Confederates take Lexington, Mo.	
“ October 21, Union defeat at Ball’s Bluff, Va.	
“ November 7, Battle of Belmont, Mo.—Capture of Port Royal, South Carolina.	
“ November 8, Seizure of Mason and Slidell,.....	259
“ December 20, Union victory at Dranesville, Va.	
“ “ 30, New York Banks suspend Specie Payments.	
1862. January 19, Union victory at Mill Springs, Ky.	
“ February 6, Capture of Fort Henry, Tennessee.	
“ “ 8, Capture of Roanoke Island, N. C.	

1862. February 16, Capture of Fort Donelson, Tenn.	
“ “ 22, Davis inaugurated for a term of six years.	
“ March 6-8, Battle of Pea Ridge, Arkansas.	
“ “ 8, Ram Virginia sinks the Cumberland and Congress	260
“ March 9, Engagement between the Monitor and Virginia.	
“ March 14, Capture of Newbern, North Carolina....	260
“ “ 23, Union victory at Winchester, Virginia,..	260
“ April 4, McClellan commences his Peninsular campaign.	
“ April 6, 7, Battle of Shiloh.	
“ “ 7, Capture of Island No. 10, Mississippi River,	
“ April 11, Capture of Fort Pulaski, Georgia.....	261
“ “ 25, Capture of Beaufort, South Carolina—Capture of New Orleans.	
“ April 28, Capture of Forts Jackson and St. Philip, Louisiana,.....	261
“ May 4, Yorktown, Virginia, taken.	
“ “ 5, Union victory at Williamsburg, Virginia.	
“ “ 9, Pensacola taken.	
“ “ 10, General Wool takes possession of Norfolk, Virginia.	
“ May 30, Corinth, Mississippi, taken.	
“ “ 31, June 1, Battle of Fair Oaks or Seven Pines.	
“ June 3, Lee assumes command before Richmond.	
“ “ 6, Surrender of Memphis, Tennessee.	
“ “ 25, Battle of Oak Grove, Virginia, commencing the seven days' struggle,.....	262
“ June 26, Battle of Mechanicsville, Virginia,.....	262
“ “ 27, Battle of Gaines' Mill, Virginia,.....	262
“ “ 29, Battle of Savage's Station, Virginia,.....	262
“ “ 30, Battles of White Oak Swamp and Charles City Crossroads, Virginia.....	262
“ July 1, Battle of Malvern Hill, Virginia—President calls for 300,000 more men,.....	262
“ August 9, President calls for 300,000 additional troops—Union victory at Cedar Mountain,.....	262
“ August 26-September 1, Pope's battles between Manassas and Washington,.....	262
“ August 30, Union defeat at Richmond, Kentucky.	
“ September 6, Lee's army invades Maryland.	

1862.	September 14, Union victory at South Mountain, Maryland.	
"	September 15, Capture of Harper's Ferry by "Stonewall" Jackson.	
"	September 17, Union victory at Antietam Creek, Maryland—Union defeat at Mumfordsville, Ky.	262
"	September 19, Union victory at Iuka, Mississippi.	
"	October 4, Confederates repulsed at Corinth, Miss.	
"	" 8, Union victory at Perryville, Kentucky.	
"	December 13, Union repulse at Fredericksburg, Va.	
"	" 29, Union repulse at Vicksburg, Miss.	
"	" 30, Battle of Murfreesboro, Tennessee (Dec. 30—Jan. 3, 1863),.....	263
1863.	January 1, Emancipation Proclamation,.....	264
"	" 11, Capture of Arkansas Post, Arkansas.	
"	April 7, Naval attack on Fort Sumter, South Carolina.	
"	April 17, Grierson's raid in Miss. (April 17—May 1).	
"	May 1, Union victory at Port Gibson, Miss.	
"	" 2, 3, Union defeat at Chancellorsville, Va.,....	264
"	" 3, Confederates capture Colonel Streight,....	266
"	" 12, Union victory at Raymond, Miss.	
"	" 14, Union victory near Jackson, Miss.	
"	" 16, Union victory at Champion's Hill, Miss.	
"	" 17, Union victory at Big Black River, Miss.	
"	June 15, Lee's second invasion of Maryland commences.	
"	June 17, Iron-clad Atlanta captured,.....	265
"	" 20, West Virginia admitted.	
"	July 1-3, Battle of Gettysburg, Pennsylvania,.....	264
"	" 4, Capture of Vicksburg, Mississippi—Confederates repulsed at Helena, Arkansas.	
"	July 8, Capture of Port Hudson, Louisiana.	
"	" 13-16, Great Riot in New York City,.....	265
"	" 21, Morgan defeated in Ohio,.....	265
"	" 26, Capture of Morgan,.....	265
"	September 7, Capture of Fort Wagner and Battery Gregg,.....	266
"	September 8, Union repulse at Sabine Pass, Texas.	
"	" 10, Capture of Little Rock, Arkansas.	
"	" 19, 20, Battle of Chickamauga, Ga.,.....	266
"	November 5, Capture of Brownsville, Texas.	
"	" 18, Knoxville, Tennessee, invested by Longstreet.	
	November 24, Union victory at Lookout Mountain,	266

-
1863. November 25, Union victory at Missionary Ridge,... 266
 " December 3, Longstreet raises the siege of Knoxville.
 1864. February 1, President orders a draft for deficiency under the last call, and 200,000 additional men.
 " February 20, Union defeat at Olustee, Florida,..... 267
 " March 3, Grant made Lieutenant-General.
 " " 13, Fort De Russy, Louisiana, taken.
 " " 14, President calls for 200,000 more men.
 " " 26, Confederates repulsed at Cane River, Louisiana.
 " April 8, Union defeat at Mansfield or Sabine Cross-roads, Louisiana.
 " April 9, Battle of Pleasant Hill, Louisiana.
 " " 12, Confederates capture Fort Pillow, Tennessee—Massacre.
 " April 18, Confederates capture Plymouth, North Carolina.
 " May 3, Meade breaks camp.
 " " 5, Butler lands on the south side of the James, 268
 " " 5-7, Battle of the Wilderness, Virginia.
 " " 7, Sherman moves from Chattanooga.
 " " 7-12, Battles near Spottsylvania Court House, Virginia.
 " May 13, 14, Battle of Resaca, Georgia.
 " " 15, Union defeat at New Market, Virginia.
 " " 28, Battle near Dallas, Georgia.
 " June 14, 15, Grant crosses to the south side of the James.
 " June 15, Alabama sunk by the Kearsarge.
 " " 15-17, Battle of Lost Mountain, Georgia,..... 268
 " " 27, Union victory at Kenesaw Mountain, Ga.
 " July 5, Early invades Maryland.
 " " 9, Union defeat at Monocacy, Maryland.
 " " 18, President calls for 500,000 volunteers.
 " " 20, 22, 28, Battles before Atlanta, Georgia,.... 268
 " " 30, Chambersburg burned—Mine exploded at Petersburg, and Union assault repulsed.
 " August 5, Union victory in Mobile Bay.
 " " 8, Fort Gaines, Alabama, taken.
 " " 18, Weldon Railroad seized.
 " " 23, Fort Morgan taken.
 " August 31, September 1, Union victory at Jonesboro, Georgia.
 " September 2, Capture of Atlanta, Georgia,..... 268

-
1864. September 19, Union victory at Winchester, Va.
 " " 22, Union victory at Fisher's Hill, Va.
 " " 29, Attack at Chapin's Bluff, Va.
 " October 19, Union victory at Cedar Creek (Middle-
 town), Virginia—Raid on St. Albans, Vermont.
 " October 27, Engagement at Hatcher's Run—Ram
 Albemarle sunk.
 " October 31, Union troops recapture Plymouth,
 North Carolina—Nevada admitted.
 " November 25, Attempt to fire New York City.
 " " 30, Battle of Franklin, Tennessee.
 " December 13, Capture of Fort McAllister, Ga.
 " " 15, 16. Union victory at Nashville, Tenn., 270
 " " 20, President calls for 300,000 men.
 " " 21, Capture of Savannah, Georgia.
 " " 24, First bombardment of Fort Fisher,
 North Carolina.
1865. January 15, Capture of Fort Fisher, N. C.
 " February 17, Capture of Columbia, South Carolina.
 " " 18, Capture of Charleston, "
 " " 22, Capture of Wilmington, N. C.
 " March 16, Battle of Moore's Crossroads, N. C.
 " " 19, 20, Battle of Bentonville, N. C.
 " " 21, Goldsborough, North Carolina, occupied.
 " " 25, Attack on Fort Steadman, Virginia.
 " April 1, Union victory at Big Five Forks, Va.
 " " 2, Lee's lines at Petersburg carried.
 " " 3, Capture of Petersburg and Richmond.
 " " 6, Union victory at Deatonville, Virginia.
 " " 9, Lee's surrender,..... 272
 " " 13, Capture of Mobile, Alabama, and Raleigh,
 North Carolina.
 " April 14, Assassination of President Lincoln,..... 271
 " " 15, Andrew Johnson takes the oath of office
 as president,..... 272
 " April 26, Johnston's surrender.

J. S. Raworth
A. Kern











J. S. Harvorth.
Aiken
S.C.

